

THE
BOTANIC PHARMACOPOEIA.

COMPRISING THE MATERIA MEDICA,
DOSES AND PREPARATIONS OF THE MEDICINES EMPLOYED IN
THE BOTANIC PRACTICE.

BY

JOHN G. HATFIELD

*MEMBER OF THE
NATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF MEDICAL HERBALISTS.*

BIRMINGHAM :
WHITE & PIKE, MOOR STREET PRINTING WORKS.

PREFACE.

A WANT having long been felt among Medical Botanists of a work partaking of the nature of a pharmacopoeia, devoted exclusively to the medicines employed in the botanic practice, the idea of writing such a work was, some years ago, suggested to me by an old practitioner in the system. Until recently, however, I did not feel my way clear to the production of such a work. Now it is completed I can only hope that it may be found a trustworthy guide, both to the student and practitioner, and by furnishing the most complete code of instructions yet given in any work on this particular branch of medicine, be of service in raising it still higher in the public estimation and, perhaps, in making it more widely known among allopathic practitioners. Perhaps it is not too much to hope that it may be found useful as a text book to the student preparing for examination as well as being useful as a work of reference to the practitioner.

JOHN G. HATFIELD.

2, QUEEN STREET, DERBY,

January, 1886.

INDEX.

Abies Excelsa.....	107	Areca.....	22
Abrotanum.....	4	“ Catechu.....	22
Absinthium.....	5	“ Nuts.....	22
Acacia.....	6	Aristolachia Serpentaria.....	136
“ Catechu.....	41	Arrack.....	46
Achillea.....	6	Artemesia.....	22
“ Millefolium.....	6	“ Abrotanum.....	4
Acid Tincture of Lobelia.....	220	“ Absinthium.....	5
Acorus Calamus.....	30	“ Vulgaris.....	22
Adeps Praeparatus.....	8	Arum.....	22
Agrimonia.....	9	“ Triphyllum.....	22
“ Eupatoria.....	9	Asclepias.....	23
Agrimony.....	9	“ Tuberosa.....	23
Ajuga.....	9	Aspidium Filix-mas.....	58
“ Chamaepitys.....	9	Assafoetida.....	24
Alchelmilla.....	10	Aurantium.....	25
“ Arvensis.....	10	Avens.....	64
Aloe.....	10	Balm.....	88
“ Barbadosis.....	10	Balm of Gilead Buds.....	26
“ Soccatrina.....	10	Balmomy.....	44
Aloes.....	10	Balsamodendron Gileadense.....	26
Althaea.....	12	Myrrha.....	96
“ Folium.....	12	Barbadoes Aloe.....	10
“ Officinalis.....	12	Barberry.....	27
“ Radix.....	12	Bark.....	48
Ammoniacum.....	15	Barosma Crenulata.....	30
Anacycius Pyrethrum.....	112	Bayberry.....	93
Angelica.....	15	Bearberry.....	151
Archangelica.....	15	Benzoin.....	26
Anise.....	17	Benzoinum.....	26
Aniseed.....	17	Berberis.....	27
“ Water.....	164	“ Vulgaris.....	27
Anisum.....	17	Betel Nuts.....	22
Anthemis.....	17	Beth.....	147
“ Nobilis.....	17	Betohica.....	28
Antibilious Pills.....	191	“ Officinalis.....	28
Antiscorbutic Ointment.....	225	Betony.....	28
Antispasmodic Powder.....	194	Birdeye.....	57
“ Tincture.....	218	“ Pepper.....	34
Aperient Pills.....	189	Bistort.....	28
Aquae.....	164	Bistorta.....	28
Aqua Anisi.....	164	Black Cohosh.....	47
“ Cinnamomi.....	164	“ Pepper.....	106
“ Menthae Piperitae.....	165	Blackroot.....	80
Arbutus Uva Ursi.....	151	Blessed Thistle.....	42
Arctii.....	20	Bloodroot.....	128
“ Folium.....	20	Blue Flag.....	75
Arctium Lappa.....	20	“ Vervain.....	54
Arctii Radix.....	20	Boneset.....	55
“ Semen.....	20	Bog Bean.....	92

Brayera Anthelmintim	53	Chelone	44
Brighteye	57	“ Glabra	44
Brionia	29	Chenopodium	45
“ Alba	29	“ Anthelminticum	45
Briony	29	“ Olidum	46
Broom	132	Cherry	111
Buchu	30	Child's Powder	202
Buckbean	92	Chimaphilla	46
Buckoo	30	Umbellitum	46
Burdock	20	Cholera Powder	206
“ Leaves	20	Cimcifuga	47
“ Root	20	“ Racemosa	47
“ Seed	20	Cinchona	48
Burgundy Pitch	107	“ Bark	48
Burnet	111	“ Flava	48
Butterburr	103	“ Pallida	48
Calamus	30	“ Rubra	48
Calendula	31	Cinnamomum	50
“ Officinalis	31	“ Zeylanicum	50
Calumba	32	Cinnamon	50
Cambogia	33	“ Water	164
Camomile	17	Cissampelos Pariera	102
Camphor Liniment	184	Citrus Aurantium	25
Canella	34	Clivers	60
“ Alba	34	Cloves	39
Capsicum	34	Cocculus Palmatus	32
“ Annum	34	Cohosh	47
Carolina Pink	137	Cold Infusion	181
Carota	37	Columbo	32
Carraway	38	Comfrey	142
Carui	38	Composition Powder	196
Carum Carui	38	Compound Confection of Male	
Caryophyllum	39	“ Fern	169
Calyophyllus	39	Compound Confection of Pepper	170
“ Aromaticus	39	“ Decoction of Sarsap-	
“ Cascarilla	40	arilla	173
Cataplasma Lini	166	Compound Fluid Extract of	
“ Ulmi	167	Sarsaparilla	180
Composita	167	Compound Infusion of Senna	183
Cataplasmata	165	“ Myrrh Liniment	185
Catechu	41	“ Slippery Elm Poul-	
Cayenne	34	ticer	67
“ Liniment	184	Confectiones	168
“ Pepper	34	“ Filicis Compositae	169
Celandine	44	“ Piperis	170
Centaurea	42	“ Rosae	170
“ Benedicta	42	Confections	168
Centaurium	42	Conium	51
Centaury	42	“ Macculatum	51
Cephalis Ipecacuanha	74	Conserve of Roses	170

Cetraria	43
“ Islandicus	43
Chamomile.....	17
“ Pills	188
Chelidonium	44
“ Majus	44

Convallaria	52
“ Polygonatum	52
Coriander.....	53
Coriandrum	53
“ Sativum.....	53
Corrective Powder	200

Cough Mixture.....	212	Extracta Fluida	180
" Powder	200	Extracts	176
Cramp Bark.....	55	" Fluid	180
Cranberry	155	Extract of Columbo.....	178
Cranesbill.....	62	" of Dandelion	179
Croton Eluteria.....	40	" of Gentian	178
Crushed Unseen	81	" of Liquorice	65
Curative Powder.....	206	" of Rhubarb	179
Curcuma	53	Extractum Calumbre	178
" Longa	53	" Gentianae	178
Cusso	3	" Rhei	179
Cystisus Scoparius	132	" Sarzre Fluidum Com	
Dandelion	143	positre.....	180
Daphne Laureola.....	78	Extractum Taraxaci.....	179
" Mezereum.....	92	Eyebright.....	57
Datura Stramonium.....	140	" Lotion	184
Daucus Carota.....	37	Family Pills	187
Decocta.....	171	Featherfew	113
Decoctions	171	Female Fern.....	110
Decoction of Broom.....	173	Fennil	58
" of Peruvian Bark.....	172	Fern	58
" of Sarsaparilla Com-		Feverfew.....	113
pound	73	Filix	58
Decoctum Cinchonae	172	Filix-mas	58
" Sarze Composita.....	173	Figwort.....	133
" Scoparii	173	Flax	81
Diarrhoea Powder	206	" Mountain.....	83
Diuretic	204	" Purging.....	83
Dock	123	" Seed	81
" Ointment	225	" " Oil	81, 99
Dorema Ammoniacum	15	Fluid Extract of Sarsaparilla,	
Elecampane.....	73	Compound	180
Electuaries	168	Fluid Extracts	180
Elder	127	Foeniculum.....	58
" Berry	127	" Vulgare	58
Elm	149	Friar's Balsam.....	217
Emplastra.....	173	Fumaria	59
Emplastrum Picis	175	" Officinalis	59
" Resinae.....	175	Fumitory.....	59
English Rhubarb.....	116	Galanga	59
Eryngium	54	Galangal	159
" Ovalifolium	54	Galium.....	60
Eryngo	54	" Aparine	60
Erythroea Centaurium	42	Gamboge	33
Essences.....	208	Garden Sage	125
Essence of Aniseed	209	Gaultheria	60
" of Peppermint	209	" Procumbens.....	60
Eugenia Pimenta	105	Gentian.....	61
Eupatorium	55	Gentiana	61
" Perfoliatum.....	55	" Lutea.....	61

Euphrasia	57
“ Officinalis	57
European Rhubarb.....	116
Exogonium.....	76
“ Purga.....	76
Extracta.....	176

Geranium.....	62
“ Maculatum.....	62
Germander.....	144
Geum.....	64
“ Rivale.....	64
Gill-over-the-Ground	64

Ginger.....	158	Infusions, cold	181
Glecoma	6	Infusum Anthemidis	182
" Hederaczea.....	64	" Kramerire et Rosze.....	183
Glycrrhiza.....	65	" Senme Composita	183
" Glabra	65	" Inllia.....	73
Gnapbalium	66	Helenium.....	73
" Uliginosum.....	66	Ipecac	74
Goldenseal	70	Ipecacuanha.....	74
Goose Grass.....	60	Iris.....	75
Granatum	67	" Versicolor	75
" Fructus Cortex.....	67	Jalap	76
" Radicis ".....	67	Jalapa	76
Great Waterdock.....	123	Jamaica Pepper.....	105
Ground Ivy.....	64	Johnswort	71
" Pine	9	Juniper.....	77
Guaiacum.....	68	Juniperus	77
" Lignum.....	68	" Communis.....	77
" Resina.....	68	Knit-bone	142
Gum.....	6	Koussou.....	53
" Ammoniacum	15	Krameria.....	78
" Arabic	6	" Trianda.....	78
" Myrrh	96	Ladslove	4
Guaiacum.....	68	Lard.....	8
Hamamelis	69	Laurel.....	78
" Virginica	69	Laureola	78
Hemlock	51, 106	Laurus Sassafras	131
Hepatica.....	69	Lavender.....	79
" Triloba.....	69	Lavandula.....	79
Hepatic Powder.....	206	" Vera	79
Herb o'Grace.....	124	Leonurus	79
Herif.	60	" Cardiaca.....	79
High Cranberry	155	Leptandra	80
Holy Thistle	42	" Virginica	80
Hops	86	Licorice	65
Horehound	87	Lily Root	97
Humulus	86	Limes	145
" Lupulus	86	" Flowers	145
Hydrastis.....	70	Linden Tree	145
" Canadensis	70	Linimenta	182
Hypericum	71	Linimert of Camphor	184
" Perfoliatum.....	71	" of Cayenne	184
Hyssop.....	71	" of Eyebright	183
Hyssopus.....	71	" of Myrrh, Compound.....	185
" Officinalis	71	Liniments	183
Iceland Moss.....	43	Linimentum Camphone	184
Ictodes	72	" Capsici	184
" Fretidus	72	" Euphrasiae	184
Indian Pink.....	137	" Myrrhae Composita.....	185
" Turnip	22	Linseed	81
Indigestion Pills	188	" Meal.....	81

Infusa.....	181	“ Oil.....	81
Infusion of Chamomile.....	182	“ Poultice.....	166
" cold	182	Linum.....	81
“ of Rhatany and Rose.....	183	" Catharticum.....	83
“ of Senna, Compound	183	“ Ussitassitum.....	81
Infusions	181	Liquorice	65

Liquorice Extract	65	Nymphoea Odorata.....	97
Liverleaf	69	Oak Lungs	112
Liverwort	69	Oak Bark	114
Lobelia.....	85	Oil of Anise	98
" Inflata.....	85	" of Carraway.....	98
Lungwort	112	" of Cloves.....	98
Lupulus.....	86	" of Juniper	98
Mace	95	" of Linseed	99
Macis	95	" of Peppermint.....	99
Male Fern.....	58	" of Rosemary	100
Male Fern Confection	169	Ointments	223
Mandrake.....	29,107	Ointment of Dock	225
Marigold	31	" of Marshmallow	224
Marjoram	100	Old Man	4
Marrubium.....	87	Oleum Anisi	98
" Vulgare.....	87	" Carui	98
Marshmallow	12	" Caryophylli	98
" Leaves	12	" Juniperi	98
" Ointment	224	" Lini	99
" Root	12	" Menthae Piperitae.....	99
Materia Medica.....	I	" Olivae	99
May Apple	107	" Rosmarini.....	100
Meadowsweet	138	Olive Oil.....	99
Melissa	88	Orange Peel	25
" Officinalis	88	Origanum	100
Mentha.....	89, 91	" Marjorana.....	100
" Piperita.....	89	Papaver.....	101
" Pulegium	90	" Somniferum	101
" Viridis	91	Pariera	102
Menyanthes.....	92	" Brava	102
" Trifoliata	2	Parietaria	102
Mezereum.....	92	" Officinalis	102
Mezerion.....	92	Parsley.....	104
Milfoil.....	6	" Piert	10
Mistletoe.....	156	" Stonebreak	10
Motherwort	79	Pellitory	112
Mountain Flax.....	83	" of Spain.....	112
Mouse-ear	66	Pellitory-of-the-Wall.....	102
" Hawkweed.....	66	Pennyroyal.....	90
Mugwort	22	Pepper	106
Mullein	153	Peppermint	89
" Dock.....	153	" Water	165
Mustard.....	136	Peruvian Bark	48
Myrica	93	Petasites.....	103
" Cerifera	93	Petroselinum.....	104
Myristica.....	95	" Sativum.....	104
" Officinalis	95	Phytolacca	104
Myrrh.....	96	" Decandria.....	104
Myrrha.....	96	Picrzena Excelsa.....	113

Myrrh Liniment.....	185
Narrow Leaf Dock	123
Nartheoe Assafretida.....	24
Nerve Pills	189
“ Powder	207
Nutmeg	95
Nymphoea.....	97

Pile Powder	203
Pill of Aloes and Rhubarb.....	187
“ of Assafoetida, Compound	189
" of Chamomile.....	188
“ Compound	188
" of Dandelion.....	192
" of Gamboge, Compound.....	189

Pill of Lobelia, Compound	190	Powder of Poplar, Compound	204
" of Mandrake	191	" of Sarsaparilla	205
" of Sarsaparilla.....	192	" of Tormentil	206
Pills.....	186	" of Valerian	207
Pilula Aloes et Rhei.....	187	Powders.....	193
" Anthemidis	188	Preface.....	2
" "Composita	188	Preparations.....	161
" Assafoetidae	189	Prepared Lard	8
" Cambogire	189	Prickly Ash.....	156
" Lobeliae.....	190	" " Bark.....	156
" Podophylli	191	" " Berries	156
" Sarzre	192	Prince's Pine	46
" Taraxaci.....	92	Proof Spirit	139
Pilulre	186	Prunus	111
Pimenta.....	105	" Virginiana	111
Pimento.....	105	Pulegium	90
Pimpernella Anisum.....	7	Pulmonaria	112
Pinus	106	" Officinalis	112
" Canadensis	106	Pulmonary Powder	203
Piper	106	Pulveres.....	193
" Nigrum.....	106	Pulverisation.....	162
Pitch.....	107	Pulvis Bistortae, Composita	194
" Plaister	75	" Carui	94
Pix	107	" Composita.....	96
" Burgundica.....	107	" Filicis Composita	98
Plaisters	173	" Gentianae ".....	198
Pleurisy Root	23	" Hydrastidis ".....	200
Podophyllum.....	107	" Inulae ".....	200
" Peltatum	107	" Myrica ".....	202
Poke Root	104	" Piperis ".....	203
Polygonum Bistorta.....	28	" Populi ".....	204
Polypodium.....	110	" Sarz ".....	205
" Vulgare.....	110	" Taraxaci ".....	206
Polypody.....	110	" Tormentillae ".....	206
Polypody-of-the-Oak.....	110	" Valeriana ".....	207
Pomegranate Rind.....	67	Pumica Granatum	67
" Root.....	67	Purging Flax	83
Pond Lily	97	Purifying Pills.....	92
Poplar	110	Purifying Powder.....	205
Poppy.....	101	Pyrethrum.....	112
" Heads	101	" Parthenium.....	113
Populus	110	Quassia.....	113
" Tremuloides.....	110	" Chips.....	113
Potentilla Tormentilla.....	146	Queen's Delight	141
Poterium	111	Quercus	114
" Sanguisorba	111	" Alba	114
Poultices	165	Raspberry	120
Powder of Bayberry, Compound	202	" Leaves.....	120
" of Bistort ".....	194	Rectified Spirit	139
" of Caraway ".....	94	Red Dock.....	123

" of Dandelion "	206
" of Elecampane "	200
" of Gentian "	198
" of Goldenseal "	200
" of Male Fern "	198
" of Pepper "	203

" Raspberry Leaves	120
" Sage	125
Resin	115
Resina	115
Resin Plaister	175
Restorative Powder	94

INDEX.

vii.

Rhatany	78
Rheum	115
" Rhaponticuffi	116
Rhubarb	115
" English	116
" European	116
" Turkey	115
Rhus	118
" Glabrum	118
Rosa	118
" Gallica	118
Rose	118
Rosmarinus	118
" Officinalis	118
Rosemary	118
Rubus	120
" Idoeus	123
Rue	124
Rumex	123
" Aquaticus	123
" Crispus	123
Ruta	124
" Graveolens	124
Sage	125
Salve	175
Salvia	125
" Agrestis	126
" Officinalis	125
Sambucus	127
" Nigra	127
Sanguinalia	128
" Canadensis	128
Sanicle	129
Sanicula	129
" Europa	129
Sapo	130
" Duras	130
Sarsaparilla	130
Sarza	130
Sassafras	131
Saxifrage	37

Skunk Cabbage	72
Slippery Elm	149
" " Poullice	167
" " Compound	167
Smilax Sarsaparilla	130
Snake Root	136
Soap	130
Soccatrine Aloes	10
Solomon's Seal	52
Southernwood	4
Spanish Juice	65
Spearmint	91
Spigelia	137
" Marilandica	137
Spiraea	138
" Alba	138
Spirit	139, 208
" of Camphor	209
" of Rosemary	210
Spirits	208
Spiritus	139, 208
" Anisi	209
" Camphor	209
" Menthae Piperiti	209
" Rectificatus	139
" Rosmarini	210
" Tenuior	139
Spotted Hemlock	51
" Thistle	42
Spurge Laurel	78
Stillingia	141
" Sylvaticum	141
Stinking Arrack	46
" Goosefoot	46
" Hemlock	51
St. Johnswort	71
Stomach Bitters	198
" Pills	187
Stramonium	140
Styrax Benzoin	26
Sumach	118
Sweet Avon	64

Scoparius	32	" Flag.....	30
Scrophularia.....	133	" Marjoram.....	100
" Vulgaris.....	133	Symphytum	142
Scullcap	133	" Officinale	142
Scutellaria.....	133	Syrups	210
" Lateriflora.....	133	Syrupi.....	210
Sea Holly	54	Syrup of Indian Pink, Compound.....	213
Senna	134	" of Lobelia.....	212
" Alexandria.....	134	" of Rhubarb	213
Serpentaria.....	136	" of Senna	213
Simple Ointment.....	224	Syrup.....	210
" Syrup.....	211	Syrupus	211
Sinapis	136	" Lobeliae	212
" Alba.....	136	" Rhoi	213

Syrupus Sennae.....	213	Unguentum Rumecis	225
Spigeliae Composita.....	213	Uva Ursi.....	151
Tancetum	143	Valerian.....	152
“ Vulgare.....	143	Valeriana	152
Tansey	143	“ Officinalis	152
Taraxacum	143	Verbascus	153
“ Dens-Leonis	143	“ Thapsus.....	153
Teucrium.....	144	Verbena	154
“ Chamcedrys.....	144	“ Officinalis	154
Thorn Apple.....	140	Vervain.....	154
Thoroughwort	55	Viburnum	155
Throatwort	133	“ Opulus	155
Thyme.....	145	Virginia Snake Root	136
Thymus.....	145	Viscum	156
“ Vulgaris.....	145	“ Album.....	156
Tilia	145	Wake Robin.....	22
“ Europa.....	145	Wall Pellitory	102
Tinctura Aloes	217	Water Betony.....	133
“ Benzoini Composita.....	217	“ Dock	123
“ Capsici	218	Waters	164
“ Carui Composita.....	218	White Briony	29
“ Gentian.....	219	“ Lily	97
“ Lobeliae Acidum	220	“ Mustard Seed	136
“ Myrrhre	220	“ Oak Bark.....	114
“ Podophylli	221	“ Poplar.....	110
“ Rhei.....	222	“ Poppy.....	101
Tincturae.....	214	Wild Carrot.....	37
Tincture of Aloes	217	“ Cherry	111
“ of Benzoini, Compound.....	217	“ Germander	126
“ of Caraway	218	“ Laurel.....	78
“ of Cayenne	218	Sage.....	126
“ of Gentian, Compound	219	Wintergreen.....	60
“ of Lobelia, Acid.....	220	Witch Hazel.....	69
“ of Mandrake	221	Wood Betony.....	28
“ of Myrrh.....	220	“ of Life	68
“ of Rhubarb.....	222	“ Sage	126
Tinctures	214	Worm Powder.....	198
Tormentil	146	Wormseed	45
Tormentilla	146	Worm Syrup	213
Trillium.....	147	Wormwood.....	5
“ Pendulum	147	Xanthoxylli Bacc	156
Turkey Rhubarb	115	“ Cortex	156
Turmeric	53	Xanthoxyllum.....	156
Tussilago Petasites	103	“ Fraxineum.....	156
Ulmus	149	Yarrow	6
“ Fulva	149	Yellow Dock	123
Unguenta.....	221	Zingiber.....	158
Unguentum	224	“ Officinalis	158
“ Althrae.....	225		

PART I.

MATERIA MEDICA

THE BOTANIC PHARMACOPOEIA.

PART I.

MATERIA MEDICA.

It has been thought advisable in the preparation of this work to adhere throughout to an alphabetical arrangement, from this arrangement only in the division of the into the two parts usual in a pharmacopoeia, of materia medica and preparations; each part, however, being arranged in the order mentioned. In the first part, or materia medica, the separate medicinal agents are described, with their capabilities for meeting disease, the usual methods in which they are employed, and the doses in which they are administered. The different modes of their preparation are, of course, described in their proper place in Part II. of this work.

For the convenience of the student, it may be advisable here to give as brief an outline as possible of the meanings of the various terms met within the descriptions of the remedies treated upon in the following pages. An alphabetical arrangement being the most suitable for reference, the following list is so prepared.

Medicinal agents are divided into the following classes : Acrids, which are those medicines, which, when taken into the mouth, occasion an irritation at the back of that organ and top of the throat, the irritation immediately passing off, or remaining for a longer or shorter period; Alteratives are those which produce a change in the morbid conditions and actions of the system generally, or of any organ in particular; Anodynes are those remedies which produce relief from pain, and are capable of producing its cessation; Anthelmintics, which are capable of effecting the removal of worms from the system; Antibilious is a term applied to those agents which possess the power of correcting undue or inefficient secretion of bile, and biliary derangement generally; Antilithics are those agents which are capable of such an action upon the kidneys as to prevent the formation of calculous matter; Antiscorbutics, which are opposed to scurvy, very similar in their action to alteratives already mentioned; Antiseptics, which prevent putrefaction, also of similar action to alteratives ; Antispasmodics, which exert a general stimulant action throughout the system, with a particular determination to the nervous system, relieving spasm, and exhibiting a soothing influence in affections of a nervous character, whether occurring as purely nervous affections or as a consequence of disease, without producing any amount of stimulus at the brain; Aperients, which possess a gentle action upon the bowels, removing collections of the alvine secretion; Astringents, whose action is that of a contractile agent upon the organic textures with which they are brought into contact; Carminatives, which, by producing a contraction of the muscular coats of the stomach and intestines, expel the wind or flatus; Cathartics, which act upon the bowels in somewhat greater degree than aperients, producing frequently a number of evacuations; Corroborarits, which, similarly to tonics, possess the power of strengthening, and imparting tone to the organs upon which their action is exercised; Demulcents, which act upon the surfaces and tissues, as oil to machinery, soothing inflammation, and preventing the contact of irritating agents with the tissues; or act upon such agents by producing a neutralization of their acrimony; Deobstruents, which are capable of the removal of chronic inflammation and enlarged conditions of the viscera and other parts; Detergents, whose action is that of a cleansing agent to wounds; Drastics, which operate with great power upon the bowels, producing still greater purgation, frequently accompanied with pain, than that produced by cathartics; Diaphoretics, which, acting upon the sweat glands, stimulate them to a greater degree of activity, producing perspiration; Emetics, which, acting upon the stomach, produce its evacuation by vomiting; Emmenagogues, the action of which is upon the uterus and adjacent organs, promoting the proper discharge of the menstrual secretion; Emollients, which exert a relaxation and a soothing influence upon inflamed surfaces; Expectorants, which increase and facilitate the discharge from the mucous membrane of the pulmonary organs; Febrifuges, which exert a peculiar action upon the system in fever, removing the febrile symptoms; Hepatics, which possess an action upon the liver similar to that produced by tonics; Hydragogues, which produce watery evacuations of stool; Laxatives, whose action is upon the bowels, producing the gentlest aperient effect; Narcotics, which may act as stimulant or sedative upon the cerebral functions, and are capable of producing, when administered in sufficient quantity, stupefaction and relief from pain (in this class are included anodynes); Nervines, which, acting upon the nervous system, impart tone and greater strength to the nerves; Purgatives, which possess a little more power upon the alvine evacuation than aperients; Refrigerants, which possess the ability of producing a lower temperature in morbid conditions of the system, accompanied with an abnormally high temperature; Rubefacients, which are capable of producing redness and inflammation of the skin; Sedatives, which depress the vital forces, and are included among narcotics; Sialagogues, which increase the secretion from the salivary glands; Stimulants, which exhibit their influence upon the system in an increased action of the heart and arteries, exciting the organs to a more normal performance of their functions;

Stomachics, which are those remedies exerting a tonic action upon the stomach especially, which may or may not be communicated in greater or lesser degree to other organs; Sudorifics, which promote perspiration to a greater extent than diaphoretics; Tonics, which, acting upon all parts of the economy, produce in debilitated conditions of the system, in whole or in part, a strengthening influence, and aid in producing a restoration of the affected organ or system to its normal condition; and Vermifuges, which are of precisely the same nature as anthelmintics. In this list are included, it is believed, all the terms employed in this work which are not self-explanatory.

ABROTANUM: .
SOUTHERNWOOD.
LADSLOVE. OLDMAN.
ARTEMESIA: ABROTANUM. THE WHOLE HERB.

Southernwood possesses tonic, deobstruent, anthelmintic, and emmenagogue properties, and is useful in obstructions generally, but with especial adaptation to those peculiar to the female organism, and against worms. It is given in infusion, which should be prepared in a covered vessel. the escape of steam impairing its properties as a medicine to a considerable extent. It is a good stimulant tonic, and possesses some amount of nervine principle, and is capable in large doses of producing copious diaphoresis. Its chief employment is in menstrual difficulties, and in the disorders frequently attendant upon abnormal conditions of the uterine system, and is perhaps as useful an emmenagogue in ordinary cases as can be employed; it is also useful in the nervous disturbance accompanying uterine disorder. A useful medicine in cases of obstinate retention of the menstrual evacuation is composed of southernwood, raspberry leaves, and pennyroyal, in equal proportions, with a small quantity of cayenne; this is made by infusion and taken warm and freely, until the desired object is attained. Considerable success has also attended the employment of southernwood as an anthelmintic, being used chiefly against the worms of children. As an external application it has been used to prevent decay and falling out of the hair, and for scurvy, dandruff, and other diseases of the hair. An excellent hair-wash, at once strengthening to the hair roots, and preventive of grey hair, is composed as follows;- Take of southernwood, rosemary, and sanicle, each a quarter of an ounce; infuse in half a pint of boiling water; strain, while hot, on camphor: two drachms, rubbed small, allowing as little escape of steam as possible. When cool, again strain. This is applied to the roots of the hair with a sponge once or twice a day.

ABSINTHIUM:
WORMWOOD.
ARTEMESIA ABSINTHIUM. THE WHOLE HERB.

Wormwood is a bitter tonic and anthelmintic, used in weak conditions of the stomach, irregular appetite, and against worms. It is given in infusion or in substance, the former mode being generally preferred. It is one of the most bitter medicines known; an excellent tonic, with strong stimulant propensities, it is well fitted for weak digestion, flatulence, dyspepsia, and other complaints arising from a debilitated condition of the stomach and digestive apparatus, or accompanying general weakness and debility, as after long illness, It is capable of employment in all indications for a combined tonic and stimulant action. In some nervous affections, more especially in certain forms of headache, it is given with great advantage; but it is always to be administered in small doses, as its too free or continued employment frequently gives rise to vertigo and nervous derangement. It has enjoyed a considerable reputation as a remedy against worms, its employment in this direction being confined chiefly to the worms of children, and its exhibition for this purpose has been successful; but, owing to its extreme nausea, it is with difficulty, if at all, that children can be prevailed upon to accept it. Against worms the powdered herb does not appear so effective as the infusion, the flavour of which cannot, when given in sufficient quantity to be effectual in the object of the exhibition, be sufficiently disguised. For this reason other, and less unpleasant, medicines of this class are generally preferred to the one at present under consideration.

ACACIA :
GUM ARABIC.
AN UNDETERMINED SPECIES OF ACACIA. THE CONCRETE JUICE.

A valuable demulcent, used in coughs and inflamed conditions of the mouth, throat, and other organs. It is given in the form of mucilage, prepared by dissolving the gum in water, care being taken always that the best white gull only is used for the purpose. This mucilage of course may be obtained of firmer or more liquid consistency, as is most convenient for administration or to the palate, by using a larger or smaller quantity of the gum in its proportion to the quantity of water employed.

Although employed principally as a vehicle for medicines less' easy of administration, and occasionally as an excipient in the preparation of pill mass, it is yet valuable in meeting most of, if not all, the indications for demulcent exhibitions, being of the utmost suitability in inflammation, or in any tendency to this condition, throughout the entire system, extending to inflammation of the bladder, kidneys, and urinary passages; it exerts a soothing influence upon all the surfaces with which it comes in contact, and with this object in view is frequently employed as an adjuvant to other medicines. The powdered gum is used as an application to wounds and sores, to stay hemorrhage, and promote a healthy, healing action. For this purpose it is simply scattered upon the surface of the wound, so as to cover its whole extent. For this species of employment it is in great favour, being valued highly by all who have tested the results of its exhibition for this purpose. Where an astringent in addition to an emollient effect is indicated, the indication it abundantly met by the combination of myrrh with the acacia in equal proportions to each other.

**ACHILLEA:
YARROW. MILFOIL.
ACHILLEA MILLEFOLIUM. THE WHOLE HERB.**

A mild aromatic, "combining in itself" astringent, tonic, alterative, diaphoretic, and diuretic properties, yarrow is well adapted to the treatment of colds, fever, hemorrhage, diabetes, dysentery, and painful and profuse menstruation. The infusion or decoction may be used, in either of which forms it is suitable in the capacities of medicine, injection, and as a wash for scorbutic and syphilitic affections. In the commencement of cold, and the earlier stages of fever, the warm infusion is given in small and frequent doses, and is fitted for extensive employment in the fevers of children, and in measles and other eruptive diseases, and is especially valuable in cases where the eruption is tardy in making its appearance. When any cough is present it is with advantage combined, in the form of infusion, with hyssop, an equal quantity of each agent being employed; this may be sweetened or not, and should be given warm and in frequent doses. Drunk freely, the infusion of yarrow produces copious perspiration, and is one of that class of medicines best adapted to the expulsion of cold from the system, the addition of a small quantity of cayenne further quickening and helping to this result. In fevers scarcely a better medicine, in point both of time and efficacy, can be employed than the infusion of yarrow a little cayenne; the quantity of the latter may be varied, being more or less at the pleasure of the patient, or as indicated by other circumstances of the case. A hot or vapour bath may be given simultaneously with the medicine in cases of this nature, by which the operation of the medicine is considerably enhanced in quickness and power. As a vulnerary, yarrow has also achieved good reputation. It is useful in hemorrhages of all kinds, in vomiting and spitting of blood, dysentery, and all complaints of similar nature attended with loss of blood. It is also successfully employed in incontinence of urine, diabetes, mucous discharges from the bladder, and other urinary difficulties, and is with advantage combined with other medicines designed to meet such indications, and those also of dropsy and affections of a dropsical nature. In these complaints it should, in all cases where the patient is strong enough to bear it, be given in sufficiently large and repeated doses to keep up a regular determination to the skin. For the purposes of an alterative yarrow is less used individually than when combined with others of this class of medicines, and is more adapted to chronic skin diseases, boils, abscesses, scurvy, scrofula, and diseased conditions of the blood of long standing, than to affections of more recent date and lesser consequence, as rashes, eruptions, and similarly slight disorders. Painful, bloody, and profuse menstruation are frequently indications for its exhibition, in all which cases it acts satisfactorily; for the latter indication, when necessary, it may also be given as an injection, and has been so employed in dysentery with decided success. The infusion also furnishes a useful wash for scrofulous, syphilitic, and other sores and ulcers, also for piles. In the latter complaint it is useful not only in the forms of medicine and wash, but forms a most useful emollient ointment, capable of more extended employment than has at present been given to it. Besides the indications already enumerated for the employment of this agent, it is a useful remedy in indigestion, colic, flatulence, pain, obstruction in any part of the system, and rheumatism; it is indeed difficult to say in what complaints it may not with advantage receive employment. It is one of the commonest wayside herbs, and as useful and well adapted for recourse in almost any emergency where other medicines are not at hand, as it is common.

**ADEPS PRAEPARATUS :
PREPARED LARD.
ADEPS PRAEPARATUS. HOGS' FAT PURIFIED BY HEAT AND STRAINING.**

A useful emollient for external application principally, entering extensively into the formation of ointments, and occasionally used in enemas designed to produce a laxative effect. Officinal preparations: Unguentum. Unguentum Althrae. Unguentum Rumezis.

**AGRIMONIA:
AGRIMONY.
AGREMONIA EUPATORIA. THE WHOLE HERB.**

Agrimony is alterative, astringent, tonic, and diuretic; it is used in jaundice and liver complaints generally, in indigestion, weakness of the stomach and digestive organs, diseases of the blood, and skin affections, and is also useful in dropsy and urinary difficulties. It may be given in infusion or decoction. In jaundice and other diseases of the liver it has been found especially useful, its excellent tonic action upon this organ being noticeable in a high degree. It imparts to the entire digestive system a fine tone and a healthy stimulus, strengthening the organs, and assisting digestion and assimilation. A medicine which is receiving constant employment for weakness and debility of the stomach, indigestion, and liver complaints, is composed as follows;- Take of agrimony, centaury, barberry, each half an ounce; boiling water, one pint; infuse, and strain. Two fluid ounces of this should be given four times a day. Agrimony is also a very useful agent in the treatment of skin eruptions and disorders of the blood, pimples, blotches, and over-heated conditions of the vital fluid. As an alterative it has an extensive use, and its employment is followed by the happiest results. It is often used as a beverage during the spring and summer months in the form of herb-beer, in which other alteratives are usually combined with it, as nettles, dandelion, clivers, &c. This is an excellent method of employment; it forms a good spring medicine, and is of service as a preventive of spring rashes and eruptions, and is pleasant and acceptable to the palate. Agrimony is as usefully employed for the youngest infant as for adults.

**AJUGA:
GROUND PINE.
AJUGA CHAMAEPITYS. THE TOPS OF THE PLANT.**

Ground pine is stimulant, diuretic. and aperient. It is occasionally used in rheumatic and gouty affections and obstructions of the circulatory system; and is also asserted useful in suppressed and retarded menstruation. It is given in infusion, but is less used now than formerly, having been superseded by medicines of greater reliability.

**ALCHELMILLA :
PARSLEY PIERT. PARSLEY STONEBREAK.
ALCHELMILLA ARVENSIS. THE WHOLE HERB.**

A useful diuretic and refrigerant, which has been less used in the regular than in domestic practice. Its chief employment is in gravel, kidney complaints, dropsy, and urinary difficulties. The infusion, in which form it is used to the greatest advantage when employed individually, forms a useful remedy in all these complaints; it is, however, as an ingredient in diuretic compounds that its best action is seen. One of the best formulas for its exhibition is the following :- Take of parsley piert, pellitory-of-the-wall, juniper berries; wild carrot, each half an ounce; boiling water one pint. Infuse. The dose is two fluid ounces or more four times a day, or oftener if desired. This forms a valued remedy for the complaints already mentioned, and for stone. It is also useful in some disorders of the liver and spleen.

**ALOE:
ALOES.
ALOE BARBADENSIS. THE INSPISSATED JUICE OF ALOE VULGARIS.
ALOE SOCCATRINA. " " " " SOCCATRINA.**

Emmenagogue, vermifuge, and cathartic. Aloe is employed in suppression of the menstrual evacuation, in liver disorder, against worms, to give tone to the stomach and digestive apparatus, and for obstructions. It is usually administered in substance, for which the form of pills is best adapted, the form in which it is generally given. A certain amount of care in its employment is requisite, as, consequent upon strong cathartic action upon the large and lower bowels, it frequently is found to produce haemorrhoids. It is valuable as an extingisher of worms, its greatest amount of success in this direction being perhaps in the removal of those worms infesting the anus. In debilitated stomach, sluggish action of the liver, and inactivity of the bowels, it is given with the most satisfactory results, creating a healthy condition of the stomach, and removing the torpor and inactivity of the adjacent organs, producing natural and healthy secretions. An aromatic should in all cases accompany its exhibition, in order to correct the tendency to griping invariably attendant upon its operation. When given with a view to its cathartic action, rhubarb is usefully combined with it, and this combination is to be preferred as acting more satisfactorily than either agent when given in its individual capacity the presence of rhubarb qualifies the action of its companion medicine, and produces a more regular while no less effective result.

As a cathartic this combination is at once thorough and safe, and to be preferred to the separate employment of either agent. Aloes has been employed with extreme benefit as an emmenagogue, for which the pill occasionally forms the most convenient mode of administration. This property is further enhanced by the addition of myrrh to the aloes, the two together presenting a most useful remedy for menstrual irregularity. As corrigents to this drug, cloves and coriander are each eligible in all its forms of employment. Aloes should never be given in any case where tendency to inflammation is manifested. Official preparations: Linimentum Myrrhae Composita, Pilula Aloes et Rhei Pilula Anthemidis Composita; Pilula Cambogiae Composita Pilula Podophylli Composita, Pilula Sarzae, Tinctura Aloes, Tinctura Benzoini Composita.

**ALTHAEAE FOLIUM:
MARSHMALLOW LEAVES.
ALTHAEA OFFICINALIS. THE LEAVES.
ALTHAEAE RADIX:
MARSHMALLOW ROOT.
ALTHAEA OFFICINALIS. THE DECORTICATED ROOT.**

Both leaves and roots of marshmallow are demulcent and diuretic; the root, however, possessing these properties in by far larger degree, is the part principally employed as an internal remedy; while the leaves have received attention chiefly as an external application in the form of fomentation, although the root has to some extent been employed as a poultice. Marshmallow root is best administered in decoction, and forms one of the most valuable agents in employment in irritated and inflamed conditions of the mucous surfaces, coughs, and lung diseases, and in dysentery, gravel, and kidney affections. In pulmonary complaints, whether recent or chronic in their origin, it is a reliable agent, healing and soothing to the lungs, assisting expectoration, relieving difficulties in respiration and spasms of coughing. For these purposes it is frequently given in the form of a syrup, a method of exhibition peculiarly convenient in the cases of children and infants. The syrup and mucilage-the latter made by boiling the decoction until it assumes the consistence of a mucilage-are each well adapted as a vehicle for the administration of other medicines, especially for those intended for the lungs and respiratory apparatus. Marshmallow is in extensive employment in urinary complaints, inflammation of the bladder and kidneys, gravel, stone, stricture, and where any difficulty is experienced in passing or in the proper retention of the urine; in all these cases it produces results of a most gratifying nature. In kidney complaints, occurring as the result of cold, sprains in the back over exertion, lifting excessively, or other similar causes, it is proposed to combine marshmallow with equal parts of pellitory-of-the-wall and poplar, say half an ounce each, to be boiled in two pints of water to a pint and a half, and given in frequent doses if required, or, in ordinary cases, in the dose of two fluid ounces four times a day. In haemorrhage from the urinary organs it is a most effectual remedy; for this purpose it has been recommended to use the powdered root boiled in milk, and in this form it is certainly more effective.

Prepared in the same manner it is equally effective in dysentery; its presence exerts a soothing influence upon the bowels, and by its tonic and demulcent properties strengthens and heals the weak parts, causing complete cessation of the haemorrhage, and leaving the whole system the healthier and stronger for its exhibition. The action of marshmallow upon the bowels is unaccompanied by any astringency, and it is therefore well calculated to reach symptoms of weakness in these organs where, from other existing causes, the employment of astringents is contra-indicated. For infantile disorders it is as well adapted as for the disorders of more advanced life, and it may be used in forming combinations with any other medicine.

In pulmonary consumption and other wasting diseases it is one of the finest strengthening medicines to which employment can be given; possessing so much nutriment that it may with propriety, with the addition of milk, be taken as a food agreeing with and remaining in the stomach when that organ has become intolerant of other foods. Any condiment, of course, may be taken with it; cinnamon and nutmeg being perhaps more eligible than others. It is also used occasionally as a poultice. To prepare this the roots are sliced and bruised, afterwards boiled in a quantity of water sufficient merely to cover them, till of the proper consistence for poulticing, when it is applied warm to the affected part. This poultice constitutes a preventive to gangrene, and is in some districts so highly valued as to have earned for the root the name of "mortification root." It is said indeed to be equal to slippery elm for the prevention of this undesirable condition. Marshmallow leaves are used as a fomentation in all cases in which this class of application is indicated; inflammation, pain, swellings, gatherings, are all relieved by the employment, as a fomentation, of the decoction. For inflammation, wherever situated, this supplies one of the best means of affording relief. Hot flannels saturated, but not dripping, with the decoction should be applied to the seat of the inflammation, and the application should be made as hot as can be borne by the patient.

Very few cases of inflammation are met with which do not readily yield to this treatment. In gatherings of the breasts, gums, or face, where it is desirable rather to discuss the collected matter than to induce suppuration, a combination with marshmallow is frequently used as follows: Take of marshmallow leaves, hops, camomiles, quarter of an ounce each, one poppy head of moderate size, and eight or ten cayenne pods; upon this pour half a pint each of boiling water and vinegar. While quite hot the affected part should be placed over the steam arising from the liquor, and retained in that position until it becomes sufficiently cool to foment the part with, which should then be done. In the cases of gatherings inside the mouth, gum boils, and similar collections of pus, the face should not only be held over the vessel, but the steam should be inhaled into the mouth. This operation is most conveniently performed by aid of a proper instrument-the inhaler; but any vessel with a narrow opening may be made to answer the purpose almost as well. When, after fomentation, it appears desirable to keep up the warmth so created, resort must be had to dry, hot flannels, in which the part is to be wrapped up, so as to secure it from contact with the cold. A valuable ointment is also prepared from the leaves, for which the formula will be found in Part II. Marshmallow flowers have been separately used for the same purposes as the leaves, but while they are less easily procurable and more expensive, they do not possess any appreciable advantage over the leaves. Official preparations of the root: Pulvis Inulre Composita; Pulvis Piperis Composita ; Pulvis Populi Composita ; Pulvis Tormentillre Composita. Official preparation of the leaves: Unguentum Althaeae.

AMMONIACUM:
GUM AMMONIACUM.
DOREMA AMMONIACUM. THE GUM-RESIN.

Ammoniacum is a stimulant expectorant, in extensive employment in chest affections and lung diseases. It is generally given in substance, either in the form of emulsion or pill. It is a valuable remedy in chronic affections of the respiratory system, bronchitis, asthma, and especially in those conditions of the pulmonary organs where it is desirable to prevent an abnormally copious secretion of the mucous membrane of the bronchii. For pectoral difficulties it is one of the oldest medicines in employment. Ammoniacum is also useful in menstrual irregularity, and in the hysterical conditions frequently arising out of that suppression, or other irregularity. Its action is much augmented when given with other medicines for similar indications. It is therefore less used in its separate condition than in combination with other expectorants and emmenagogues. Ammoniacum is also used as a plaister for external application for indolent tumours, chronic enlargements of the joints, white swellings, and for similar indications. Official preparation: Pilula Lobelire composita.

ANGELICA:
ANGILICA.
ANGELICA ARCHANGELICA. THE ROOT AND SEED.

Both root and seed of this plant possess similar properties, which indeed are shared by the leaves, but in lesser degree. Angelica is a stimulant and carminative, used in pectoral complaints, coughs, colds, influenza, and diarrhcea. It is given in substances or in infusion; in the latter form being prepared in a covered vessel, in order to prevent the escape of steam during infusion. It is very largely employed in combination with expectorants, the action of which is facilitated, and to a large extent diffused, through the whole pulmonary region by its presence; its aromatic and carminative properties, with which it unites that of a gentle tonic, also render it of especial suitability in all cases where, by long-continued discharges, chronic states of disease, and other causes, the digestive functions have become enfeebled and impaired, and debility of the system has by these means been induced. It has for this reason an extended employment in pulmonary consumption and other wasting diseases, imparting a tone, not to the digestive organs alone, but also to the lungs and other parts of the system, thus relieving the more urgent and distressing indications without giving rise to feverish or other unfavourable symptoms. It is of extreme value in ordinary cough, catarrh, and influenza. In all these cases the warm infusion should be exhibited. This frequently induces a gentle and continuous perspiration, relieving the symptoms indicating its employment, and causing a healthy reaction throughout the entire system, throwing off the whole effects of the cold. In diarrhea and weakness of the bowels it is employed with very great success, and may in all cases be given where indications exist for a carminative exhibition. In these cases it is frequently combined to advantage with astringents. It is also highly recommended for urinary calculus, gravel, and similar urinary obstructions. and difficulties, and also possesses some power in dropsical disorders. Angelica is contra-indicated by the presence of any tendency towards diabetes, and is in no case to be administered where any such tendency is present. The leaves form a warm, aromatic infusion, grateful to the stomach, and occasionally useful in sickness; and in sudden attacks of wind, flatulence, spasms, colic, diarrhea, and recent colds, it may be employed in the absence of the root as a medicinal agent.

Both root and seed of this plant possess similar properties, which indeed are shared by the leaves, but in lesser degree. Angelica is a stimulant and carminative, used in pectoral complaints, coughs, colds, influenza, and diarrhoea. It is given in substances or in infusion; in the latter form being prepared in a covered vessel, in order to prevent the escape of steam during infusion. It is very largely employed in combination with expectorants, the action of which is facilitated, and to a large extent diffused, through the whole pulmonary region by its presence; its aromatic and carminative properties, with which it unites that of a gentle tonic, also render it of especial suitability in all cases where, by long-continued discharges, chronic states of disease, and other causes, the digestive functions have become enfeebled and impaired, and debility of the system has by these means been induced. It has for this reason an extended employment in pulmonary consumption and other wasting diseases, imparting a tone, not to the digestive organs alone, but also to the lungs and other parts of the system, thus relieving the more urgent and distressing indications without giving rise to feverish or other unfavourable symptoms. It is of extreme value in ordinary cough, catarrh, and influenza. In all these cases the warm infusion should be exhibited. This frequently induces a gentle and continuous perspiration, relieving the symptoms indicating its employment, and causing a healthy reaction throughout the entire system, throwing off the whole effects of the cold. In diarrhea and weakness of the bowels it is employed with very great success, and may in all cases be given where indications exist for a carminative exhibition. In these cases it is frequently combined to advantage with astringents. It is also highly recommended for urinary calculus, gravel, and similar urinary obstructions, and difficulties, and also possesses some power in dropsical disorders. Angelica is contra-indicated by the presence of any tendency towards diabetes, and is in no case to be administered where any such tendency is present. The leaves form a warm, aromatic infusion, grateful to the stomach, and occasionally useful in sickness; and in sudden attacks of wind, flatulence, spasms, colic, diarrhea, and recent colds, it may be employed in the absence of the root as a medicinal agent.

ANISUM :
ANISEED.

PIMPERNELLA ANISUM. THE FRUIT.

A grateful aromatic, carminative, and stimulant, useful in flatulence, indigestion, and colic, especially in the colic of infants. The infusion may be given, but it is not so speedy in operation in this form as when exhibited in substance. The powder is given, for colic and similar complaints, to the best advantage in hot water, being administered while as hot as can be taken into the system. In convulsions it may be given with perfect safety, and, except in their most severe forms, with reasonable certainty of securing an entire remission of the symptoms: this is the case where any possibility of their prevention exists. It also enjoys considerable reputation as a medicine in coughs and pectoral affections; in those hard, dry coughs, where expectoration is performed with difficulty, it is of much value, and forms a useful addition to pulmonary medicines, particularly where it is desired to give relief to spasmodic coughs and other affections of a spasmodic nature. Aniseed is most used, however, as a corrigent to griping and other unpleasant medicines, aiding in their diffusion through the system and correcting any unpleasant symptoms which, in the absence of an agent similar to this, might be created. Official preparation: Pulvis Inulae Composita.

ANTHEMIS:

.CHAMOMILE.CAMOMILE.

ANTHEMIS NOBILIS. THE FLOWERS.

In small doses chamomile is an efficient tonic and stomachic; in large doses it is emetic and diaphoretic, and as an effect of its stimulant property, acting also as a diuretic. It is given in indigestion, head pain, debility the digestive apparatus, flatulence, and similar ailments; but, from its tendency, when exhibited in large or frequent doses, to produce an emetic action, it is better adapted for combination with other medicines than for individual exhibition. Its continued employment, even in small doses, frequently produces a condition of the stomach such as to render that organ intolerable of food. In the slighter forms of indigestion and disordered stomach, with the disturbance usually attendant upon these conditions, where a prolonged course of treatment is uncalled for, the simple infusion of chamomile is employed with benefit. The infusion should in all cases be prepared in a covered vessel, in order to prevent the escape of steam, as the medicinal virtue of the flowers is to a considerable extent impaired by any evaporation (see "Infusum Anthemidis" in Part II.) When required as a tonic, and in dyspeptic complaints, a convenient and useful method for exhibition of this agent is offered as follows: Take of chamomile, gentian, Peruvian, and columbo, each a quarter of an ounce; boiling water, one pint. Infuse in a covered vessel for one hour in a moderately warm situation. This, for debility of the digestive apparatus, impaired appetite, and dyspepsia, forms a most admirable medicine.

Chamomile is recommended as a tonic, where such impression is desired, in dropsical complaints, as combining in itself both diuretic and tonic properties; it is also combined with diaphoretics and other stimulants with decided advantage. Possessing in a high degree the properties of an emetic, it is employed for this capacity as a vehicle for the exhibition of more powerful emetics. Its action in this respect is materially assisted by causing the patient to take copiously the warm infusion of balm, pennyroyal; or some other simple stimulant. Chamomile also has an extensive employment as a poultice and fomentation for external swelling and pain, especially of the facial region. Used in either way it exerts a most soothing action upon the affected part, reducing the swelling, and giving relief from pain; but it should always be understood that this poultice is intended to discuss swellings, and not to bring them to suppuration. In neuralgia a poultice of the flowers is successfully employed with a view to relieve the pain, and at the same time secure a reduction of the swelling. This poultice, as generally employed, is prepared by scalding a quantity of flowers, sufficient in quantity to the size of the poultice required; the liquor in which the flowers have been scalded being used as a fomentation, while the flowers so treated are applied as an ordinary poultice to the surfaces affected. A better method, however, in which to prepare this poultice is to procure a bag of muslin or flannel, preferably of the former, from four to six inches square this is to be loosely filled with flowers and sewn up. It is a most simple method, and by keeping two or three such bags in readiness for immediate use, a chamomile poultice is procurable at a minute's notice. The bag being so prepared, all that is necessary when required for application is to steam it until warmed through, which may be conveniently done by holding it over the steam from a kettle of water, and the poultice is then ready for application. One such poultice is found to satisfy for two or three applications, as the strength of the flowers is retained in an unexhausted condition during this period of use. It may be taken as a safe guide that while, upon heating, the aroma and flavor of the flowers are present, the poultice is capable of further employment. The infusion is usefully employed as a fomentation for swelled face and gathering inside the mouth during and after neuralgic attacks; its action in these cases is augmented by the addition of a few cayenne pods to the infusion. This addition also renders it more speedy in point of time in bringing about the desired change. Chamomile herb. is occasionally used, but chiefly in domestic practice it possesses considerable tonic power, and has also been used as a stomachic, and in indigestion. It may be used where a bitter is indicated. Official preparation of the flowers: Infusum Anthemidis.

**ARCTII FOLIUM:
BURDOCK LEAVES.
ARCTIUM LAPPÆ. THE LEAVES.
ARCTII RADIX:
BURDOCK.
ARCTIUM LAPPÆ. THE ROOT.
ARCTII SEMEN:
BURDOCK SEED.
ARCTIUM LAPPÆ. THE SEED.**

Burdock is one of the most valuable agents in the materia medica, the whole plant being possessed of medicinal properties in a high degree. The leaves are emollient and tonic, and are useful to impart strength and tone to the stomach. They have been used a good deal in skin diseases, in which, however, they are not so useful as the root. They are well adapted, from their possession of such emollient property, as a poultice for inflamed surfaces. The root is the part principally employed in medicine. It is alterative, anti-scorbutic, and diuretic, and is used in diseases of the blood; quats, boils, skin diseases, scurvy, scrofulous and rheumatic affections. It is best given in decoction. So efficient has this agent been found in impurities and diseases of the blood, that by many writers and practitioners it is considered to be fully equal to sarsaparilla. In the treatment of all blood disorders it is esteemed highly, forming a valuable remedy in old-standing cases of eruptions upon the surface, running sores, and similar chronic impure conditions of the blood. In the minor and more recent rashes and affections it will often be found sufficient in itself to effect a cure. Its value, however, is in all cases greatly enhanced by the addition to it of yarrow in an equal proportion. This combination has produced surprising results in old-standing diseased conditions of the blood, scurvy, boils -whether occurring as primary or secondary symptoms-abscesses, and chronic, cutaneous diseases generally. These two agents in combination form one of the most excellent and, generally speaking, reliable medicines to which employment can be given for these purposes; but it is always to be remembered that of no one article of medicine it can be asserted that cure will invariably follow its exhibition. For this no other reason can be stated than the well-known fact that to what in one individual a given disease will readily yield, in another it will offer to the same medicine resistance of a most obstinate nature.

Indeed, the same may be said frequently of the action of the same medicine upon the same individual for the same indications, but at two different periods: in the one case the desired action will be speedily observed from it in the least possible degree. It cannot, therefore, be said of any medicine in employment that it is an actual specific against the disease in which it is in constant and every-day employment with the most perfect success. Subject only to this qualification, it may be relied upon that burdock and yarrow in combination are being employed with the utmost success in all blood diseases. Besides its exhibition as an alterative, burdock root receives constant employment as an adjuvant to medicines for dropsy, gravel and affections of a rheumatic and gouty nature, and of the circulatory system generally. Burdock seed is diuretic, nervine, tonic, and alterative. It is given in infusion, and in the usual quantities. As a nervine diuretic, where a tonic impression is also indicated, it is employed to advantage. Its properties are very similar to those possessed by the root, but the seed contains in addition valuable nervine properties, and as a diuretic is to be preferred for promptitude and certainty of action to the root. Its principal employment is in dropsical complaints, more especially in cases where there is co-existing derangement of the nervous system as one of the consequences of disease.

ARECA
ARECA NUTS. BETEL NUTS.
ARECA CATECHU. THE KERNEL OF THE FRUIT.

This is a powerful astringent used in diarrhoea, in which it has met with some amount of success. It is also used against worms, principally the tapeworm. For this purpose it would seem well adapted. It is perhaps less in favour as an ordinary medicine than for the worms and distemper of dogs, for which it is in very common use, and enjoys considerable reputation.

ARTEMESIA:
MUGWORT
ARTEMESIA VULGARIS. THE WHOLE HERB.

Mugwort possesss diaphoretic, emmenagogue, and nervine properties. it is employed in cold, ammenorrhoea, epilepsy, and nervous disorders. It is given in infusion, which should be prepared in a covered vessel, and is to be preferred for exhibition while warm. Its chief employment is in suppressed, obstructed and painful menstruation, to which difficulties it is most successfully applied. AS a nervine it is valued in palsy, fits, epileptic and similar affections; but for these purposes it is more fitted for combination with other nervines than for separate employment. It is also useful as a diaphoretic in the commencement of cold, and is well adapted for suppression of urine from cold.

ARUM:
INDIAN TURNIP. WAKE ROBIN.
ARUM TRIPHYLLUM. THE ROOT.

An acrid stimulant, diaphoretic, and expectorant, of the utmost value in hoarseness, coughs, asthma, rheumatism, and lung diseases. In all these indications it is given with marked success. It is said to be useful when taken immediately after eating to assist digestion and promote assimilation. As a stimulant, diaphoretic, and expectorant, this agent can scarcely be surpassed for thoroughness and efficiency of action. It is one of the finest stimulants to the lungs in consumption, asthma, and chronic forms of lung complaints. Owing to its extreme acrimony it is most conveniently given in substance syspended in syrup or honey, or it may be given in sugar. In small quantities it has been given for the aphthous sore mouth of infants; but other medicines possessing, in respect of this property, equal virtues, without its intense acrimony, are, for obvious reasons, generally preferred.

ASCLEPIAS:
PLEURISY ROOT.
ASCLEPIAS TUBEROSA. THE ROOT.

Pleurisy root is tonic, diaphoretic, expectorant, and diuretic: in small doses a mild astringent; in large doses sometimes capable of considerable cathartic action. As a sudorific it acts without any great stimulant effect upon the system generally, while yet exerting a gentle but efficient stimulus upon the excretory organs, at the same time producing a fine tonic impression upon the whole system; bracing and giving strength and vigour to all the organs and tissues of the body, with more especial determination to the lungs and whole pulmonary region; thus producing, in conjunction with its expectorant property, a specific action upon that part of the system.

Its chief employment, indeed, is in pectoral affections, in which its exhibition is almost invariably productive of good results. It assists in expectoration, promoting a free and copious amount of the secretion, and giving relief in difficulties of the respiratory operation. In pleurisy it is invaluable. Mention of this will sufficiently indicate the origin of the name by which it has become generally known. In all chest diseases, consumption, bronchitis, chronic cough, catarrh, and catarrhal complaints of long standing, it is one of the most efficient medicines in employment. It is given with success in dysentery and in acute rheumatism and in acute diseases generally it is with advantage combined with other medicines; also in infantile complaints, cold, cough, measles, fever, and the diarrhoea induced by, or occurring as a separate. indication in, any of these complaints; and for infantile disorders generally it receives most' successful employment. It may be given in decoction or infusion in the usual quantity as the medium dose, and is perfectly safe in its action, being alike suitable for administration to infants, those in middle life, and to the complaints of those of advanced life. Official preparation: Pulvis Myricae Composita.

ASSAFOETIDA:

ASSAFOETIDA.

NARTHECE ASSAFOETIDA: THE CONCRETE JUICE OF THE ROOT.

Assafoetida is a valuable antispasmodic; expectorant, and nervine, occasionally exhibiting a laxative tendency. It is given in flatulent colic, debility of the stomach and bowels, cough, pulmonary consumption, hysteria, nervousness, and in all similar indications. It is usually administered in substance, for which the form of pills is the one most generally suitable: from ten to twenty grains maybe given three or four times during the twenty-four hours. As an antispasmodic assafoetida is probably unequalled by any, other single article of the materia medica. It is by far preferable to opium; possessing all the capabilities of the latter drug to relieve disease, it is absolutely free from the undesirable effects frequently following upon the employment of this drug. In spasms and debility it is of very great value; and in chronic cases, accompanied with heartburn and nervous disturbance, whether immediately following upon taking food into the system, or continuously present with the patient, its effects are the more marked. In heart disease, hysteria, head pain, sleeplessness, overwrought conditions of the brain, and in the delirium of fevers it is exhibited with the utmost success; indeed, for the febrile symptoms, in the total absence of delirium, it is a useful agent. In the fever of consumption, with its restlessness and concomitant results in the condition of the system, it is one of the most useful medicines capable of employment; its action is not, however, confined to the removal of the more urgent symptoms merely, for upon the respiratory system it acts with no less marked effect, alleviating the painful cough, and inducing a condition of repose throughout the entire system. In bronchitis and spasmodic asthma its action is at once speedy and reliable, arresting the paroxysms of coughing, and exerting upon all the surfaces and vessels involved a calming, and soothing influence which can be productive only of good results. This condition is produced by no narcotic property possessed by the remedy, but by the elegant combination of anti-spasmodic and, expectorant, properties contained in itself. Assafoetida is also useful in whooping and other coughs of children and infants. Generally speaking, its exhibition should be avoided where there is any tendency to inflammation. Official preparation: Pilula Assafoetidae Composita.

AURANTIUM:

ORANGE PEEL.

CITRUS AURANTIUM. THE RIND OF THE FRUIT.

A mild aromatic, tonic, and stimulant. It obtains its principal employment as an adjuvant to medicines less pleasant and easy of administration than itself, the taste of which it serves to a considerable degree to cover, and, as a corrigent, to prevent the griping tendencies of bitter and purgative medicines which, in their unqualified employment, might otherwise be manifested. For these purposes it is used, in the various forms of tincture, syrup, and infusion. It should not be boiled, and it is advisable that the infusion be prepared in a covered vessel, so that no escape of steam, is permitted during the operation, as by the omission of this precaution its medicinal virtues are liable to become somewhat impaired. As a medicine the infusion has been successfully employed in disordered and debilitated conditions of the stomach and digestive apparatus, flatulence, griping pains, and indigestion, and, generally, as a mild stomachic and stimulant in this class of affections. A wine-glassful of the infusion taken before eating forms a grateful tonic; while the same quantity taken after meals acts as a stimulant to digestion. Official preparation: Tinctura Gentianae Composita.

BALSAMODENDRON GILEADENSE:

BALM OF GILEAD BUDS.

BALSAMODENDRON GILEADENSE. . THE FRUIT.

Stimulant, tonic, diuretic, and alterative, these buds, as they are usually termed, are useful in chest affections, and as a lung tonic have received most successful employment, although they are less in repute as a medicine at present than formerly was the case. The decoction is the usual form of administration, and is given with benefit in kidney complaints and gravel; and, as an alterative, has been found useful in rheumatic affections and diseases of the blood. It would seem specially adapted to the coughs and chest complaints occurring during dropsical affections, and in the coughs of persons in advanced life.

**BENZOINUM:
BENZOIN.
STYRAX BENZOIN. THE CONCRETE JUICE.**

Benzoin is stimulant and expectorant. Formerly it received considerable employment in coughs and pectoral affections generally, and at one time enjoyed an extensive reputation in the regular practice; it is now in very little use except in the compound tincture of benzoin, the Friars' Balsam of the shops. The inhalation of the fumes of benzoin has been found useful in certain throat diseases, and in affections of the respiratory apparatus; incases in which the passage has been in danger of completely closing up, as in diphtheria, and similar affections of the fauces and adjacent organism, its employment has been resorted to with the most gratifying results. For these purposes it may be burnt upon a hot coal, so as to secure the full impregnation of the air of an apartment; or it may be inhaled in the ordinary manner by placing a sufficient quantity in the inhaler, and, after covering with boiling water, proceed in the usual way. This appears to be of exceptional value in the treatment of complaints of the respiratory system. Official preparation: Tinctura Benzoini Composita.

**BERBERIS :
BARBERRY.
BERBERIS VULGARIS. THE BARK.**

Barberry is tonic and, in medium doses, laxative; in large doses, cathartic. It forms an excellent medicine in liver complaints, jaundice, bilious affections, indigestion, constipation and in some forms of headache. It is given in decoction, the quantity and frequency of the dose being regulated by its action upon the bowels. In jaundice and liver derangement a frequent repetition, rather than a large dose, will be found most adapted to secure the results desired. This is the case even in torpor and congested condition of this organ accompanied with constipation. Barberry has been stated by various writers, accepted as authorities, to be valueless as a medicinal agent, and to have been brought into notice as such merely from the circumstance of the inner surface of the bark possessing a yellow colour, it being similar in respect of colour to that of the skin in jaundice. This, however, is the merest hearsay, no writer possessing any experience of its employment medicinally could state this. Whatever may have been the origin of its employment, and it is, of course, possible that this may have been the circumstance which led to it, it is most valuable as an agent in the treatment of liver and biliary disorders. It is suitable alike for individual exhibition and for combination with other medicine.

**BETONICA:
BETONY. WOOD. BETONY.
BETONICA OFFICINALIS. THE WHOLE HERB.**

Betony is a nervine tonic, useful in nervous affections, hysteria, palpitation, pains of the head and face, and neuralgic affections. It is more frequently employed in combination with other nervines than alone, as in the latter case it is apt frequently, to be somewhat tardy in its action. It may be administered in infusion or decoction; The weak infusion forms a very acceptable substitute for tea, and in this capacity it is extensively used in many localities. It also enters into the composition of a large proportion of the "herb" and "botanic beers" and "beverages," and for this it is well adapted, both with regard to its flavour and medicinal properties. Appended is a formula which will be found useful as a refreshing and acceptable beverage, especially during the hot weather, presenting at the same time an excellent tonic. Take of betony, agrimony, meadow sweet, each one, ounce; water, two gallons; boil together for fifteen minutes. While hot strain upon two pounds of sugar; allow the sugar to dissolve, and when, just warm work with barm or yeast, and put into small, well-stoppered bottles which are to remain unopened until required for use. This forms an excellent beverage for table use as a substitute in hot weather for fermented drinks, and is at the same time useful as a tonic and spring medicine.

BISTORTA :
BISTORT.
POLYGONUM BISTORTA. THE. ROOT.

A strong astringent, indicated in hemorrhage, diarrhoea, and similar complaints. It is a most effectual remedy for bleeding from the nose, and is also useful in other forms of hemorrhage, particularly in dysentery and from the uterus to which forms it would appear peculiarly adapted and in which it is most successfully employed. In diarrhoea and incontinence of urine it is also exhibited with advantage. The decoction, in which form it is generally administered as a medicine. except when occasionally given in substance, is useful also as an injection in profuse menstruation, and also provides a useful wash for ulcerated mouth and gums. The powdered root is used as a dentifrice to cleanse and preserve the teeth and to fasten loose teeth; it also entirely prevents scurvy from making its appearance in the gums. The powder also finds employment as a sternutory in polypus and affections of the nose preventing free respiration. Official preparation: Pulvis Bistortre Composita.

BRIONIA:
WHITE BRIONY. MANDRAKE.
BRIONIA ALBA. THE ROOT.

Briony is an exceedingly active hydragogue cathartic, acting with such violence and power as to render its employment as an internal remedy unsafe. It is not to be confounded with the American Mandrake (podophyllum). as, owing probably to their common cathartic properties. has been the case, they being two distinct plants.

As an external application. briony is used to bruises to remove the blackness or extravasation of blood; for this it is very serviceable, accomplishing the removal in a very short time. Where the fresh root is employed it is scraped to a pulp, and the pulp so obtained is applied in the form of poultice to the surfaces to be acted upon. When the dried root is employed it must be first reduced to a state of powder, and afterwards proceeded with as an ordinary poultice, being prepared with either water or milk, and applied in the same manner. Briony is given by grooms and stablemen to their horses in small quantities to improve the appearance of their coats. For this it is said to answer admirably; a very small quantity being sufficient, and its repetition being required but seldom.

BUCKOO:
BUCHU.
BAROSMA CRENULATA AND OTHER SPECIES. THE LEAVES.

Buchu possesses diuretic, diaphoretic, and stimulant properties, its chief employment being in urinary affections, catarrh of the bladder, mucous discharges, incontinence of urine and gravel. Besides these complaints, however, it is of service in chronic rheumatism, dyspepsia, and debility of the digestive organs. It is administered in substance and in infusion. The infusion forms one of the most admirable stimulants which can be desired to the urinary system. In chronic urinary ailments it is given to advantage, and is highly esteemed as a remedy for stricture, gravel and urinary calculus. Perhaps its best action is manifest in its employment in debilitated conditions of the bladder, accompanied with mucous discharges from that organ. In these conditions its exhibition communicates tone to the bladder and the whole of the adjacent parts, strengthening the whole urinary system, correcting the discharge, and producing copious diuresis where retention or suppression of the urinary evacuation has occurred; at the same time it produces a gentle, or, occasionally, an abundant determination to the skin, thus rendering it suitable for employment in dropsy. It is given to advantage in incontinence of urine, and in some skin diseases.

CALAMUS:
SWEET FLAG.
ACORUS CALAMUS. THE ROOT.

This root is a valuable stimulant, aromatic, and tonic, suitable for employment in flatulence and colic, and may be given in all cases where an aromatic seems called for. It is spoken of by several writers as deserving of much more extended attention than has up to the present time been given to it. It certainly is a most useful medicine, and would seem only to require a short trial in order to establish it as one among our most valuable aromatics. Its exhibition in spasms of wind and similar attacks is followed by almost immediate relief. In debility of the system, and more especially of the digestive apparatus, occurring as the result of long illness, and from other causes, it is found to be of the utmost utility, and one of the most effective agents in employment.

It would seem peculiarly adapted to the treatment of those chronic forms of dyspepsia, accompanied with extreme debility, in which a continued employment of medicine for some time is rendered necessary, It forms an admirable adjuvant to purgative and other medicines capable of producing wind or griping during the period of their operation. As a stomachic it is employed with the happiest results, both as an individual remedy and in combination with Peruvian bark or gentian, the action of which in common that of other bitters, but particularly with these agents, it serves to qualify and assist. A wine-glassful taken after a meal is also said to afford a most efficient aid to digestion.

**CALENDULA:
MARIGOLD.
CALENDULA OFFICINALIS. THE PETALS OF THE FLOWERS.**

Marigold is antispasmodic, deobstruent, diaphoretic, and in some degree also emmenagogue. It is useful for wind, disorders of the stomach and liver, in some forms of headache, and in jaundice. In low fevers it is employed with success; and in measles, smallpox, and eruptive diseases, more especially in those of children, it forms one of the most valuable medicines extant. The infusion is the most convenient form for employment, and no difficulty is experienced in getting even infants to drink it freely. In febrile and eruptive complaints it may be given in any quantity, the patient being allowed to drink it at any time, being in fact used rather as a beverage than as a medicine. It induces a gentle determination to the surface, and brings out the eruption, while thoroughly cleansing the entire system of morbid humours and secretions, leaving every organ in a perfectly healthy condition.

**CALUMBA:
COLUMBO.
COCCULUS PALMATUS. THE ROOT.**

This is a good bitter stomachic and tonic of especial value, from the entire absence it possesses of stimulant property, its employment being followed by no unpleasant after-effects, producing as it does neither purgation nor constipation. It is employed in infusion or decoction, preferably the former, and in this form presents an excellent remedy for dyspeptic complaints and weakness of the digestive apparatus. In convalescence from disease the infusion obtained from this agent also offers one of the finest tonics possible for the low and weak condition in which the system is generally found at this period. In pulmonary consumption also it is one of the most useful tonic medicines as possessing neither stimulant nor other action upon the bowels, it leaves no tendency to purging or other debilitating process. With a view to this impression it is frequently combined with pulmonary medicine's. It is exhibited with success in the diarrhoea of consumption; in which, by imparting a tonic influence to the bowels; it seems to remove, not so much the discharge as the cause of the discharge, preventing for the time any recurrence. In chronic diarrhoea, dysentery, and cholera, occurring either in infants or adults, it is of somewhat extensive employment. It has also been highly recommended in the vomiting of pregnancy, for which it seems to possess a singular efficacy. It is frequently employed, in combination with aromatics, in wind and spasms; its employment being continued generally, after relief has been produced, without the aromatic. With aperients, too, columbo is frequently combined, the operation of which, in those cases where a tonic impression is indicated especially, is considerably augmented by its presence. In liver complaints, torpid conditions of that organ; and bilious derangement, accompanied by either constipation or purgation, it is extremely useful. Where constipation is present it may be exhibited in combination with mandrake and an aromatic. For the latter indication perhaps cloves will be found the most suitable agent; or, if a relaxed condition of the bowels form the accompaniment or consequence of liver disorder, it is given with tormentil, and the addition of a small quantity of cayenne will in most cases be found an advantage. Columbo is one of the most valuable of tonics, and as such may be in most cases substituted for Peruvian, when the latter article is not so readily obtainable. Official preparations: Pulvis Podophylli Composita; Pulvis Gentianae Composita.

**CAMBOGIA :
GAMBOGE.
BOTANICAL NAME OF THE PLANT UNKNOWN.
THE CONCRETE JUICE.**

A powerful drastic hydragogue cathartic. In large doses it has been known to produce death by ulceration and gangrene; in the ordinary dose it is one of the most valuable evacuents of the bowels, especially in dropsical complaints in consequence of a useful stimulant action upon the urinary system. Against tape worm it has been employed, and is of great efficacy in its removal.

The best form in which to administer gamboge is in combination with a purgative of less power than itself, the action of which it increases, while its own more powerful effects are largely qualified, and its griping and nauseating tendencies to a great extent corrected. This is, of course, still more effectually prevented by the addition of an aromatic, or of a small quantity of an essential oil. It is generally given in substance, the form of pills being generally employed; it may, however, be given in the form of emulsion, or in infusion, as is occasionally resorted to. The ordinary dose is from two to six grains. Official preparation: Pilula Cambogiae Composita.

CANELLA:
CANELLA.
CANELLA ALBA. THE BARK

Canella is a gentle stimulant, aromatic, and tonic - useful in weakness of the stomach, exerting a warm cordial effect upon that organ, and well suited to dyspepsia and debility of the digestive organs. It is, however, in little use, except as an adjuvant to other medicines, for which it is well fitted; this being especially the case with tonics and bitters.

CAPSICUM:
CAYENNE. CAYENNE PEPPER. BIRD PEPPER.
CAPSICUM ANNUM, AND OTHER SPECIES OF CAPSICUM.
THE FRUIT

Cayenne is a powerful stimulant, producing a heat and burning sensation in the mouth, which immediately upon swallowing is communicated to the stomach, speedily diffusing itself throughout the entire system. It is one of the finest stimulants which can possibly be employed, and the indications for its exhibition are many and various; it is given in cramp, colic, pain at the stomach and in the bowels, and in constipation. It is an efficient diaphoretic, and well adapted to the treatment of colds, catarrhal affections, lung diseases, and for all cases in which it appears desirable to raise the temperature of the body. Cayenne is given in the forms of infusion, substance, and tincture, when separately employed, for obvious reasons, it is generally administered in substance, which may be accomplished by swallowing the whole fruit, by employment of the form of pills, or it may be given suspended in syrup or treacle. The most elegant preparation, perhaps, for internal exhibition when it is desired to, administer it' in its individual capacity, is the infusion, sweetened to the "Consistence of a syrup. A weak infusion, which may be sweetened or not at pleasure, given in small and repeated doses of about two fluid drachms every thirty, minutes, or oftener when necessary, is useful in colds, relaxed throat, cold conditions of the stomachic dyspepsia, spasms, palpitation, and in rheumatism and, gouty affections; it is of special suitability, to these, complaints when occurring in patients addicted to an intemperate use of alcoholic stimulants. In' the more acute forms of these affections it will be found of advantage to employ a dose of from half to one fluid drachm, repeated at intervals of three or four minutes until relief is obtained. This is also found to be one, of the most successful methods of treatment for the delirium of drunkards, producing a stimulus which is, quickly felt through the entire system, and throwing off the fit of intoxication with its attendant symptoms. In constipation, Cayenne is also employed with good result, it induces a natural evacuation of the bowels, without purgative effect; acting simply as a stimulant, it secures the proper performance of their functions by every organ of the body. It has no action upon the secretions or excretions where a normal condition already exists; and where the normal condition is disturbed, it simply acts by restoring to its natural condition the organ or tissue affected; in consequence of this action it not infrequently acts as a purgative and diuretic in cases where the functions of the liver and bowels or urinary system are from any cause imperfectly performed. In costiveness the most convenient exhibition will be found, generally, to be the pill form; the dose will vary in different cases and individuals, from three to six grains. Generally, immediately upon its exhibition in substance, whatever the form adopted, a sense of heat is experienced in the stomach, which, when followed by purgative effect, is communicated to the bowels; this burning sensation, however, usually passes off in from three to five minutes, according to the quantity administered. With the first evacuation of the bowels after exhibition, however, a similar burning sensation is felt at the anus, denoting the voidance of the agent. After a continued employment for a few days, these unpleasant symptoms diminish, and, as the system becomes more habituated to its presence and action, finally disappear. Cayenne is well adapted for combination with medicines designed, for pectoral affections, to promote a diaphoretic, diuretic, or emmenagogue action, to prevent the griping and nausea of unpleasant medicines, and is most suitable with medicines to which a warmth and carminative action is desired to be imparted. An infusion of the strength of half an ounce of cayenne in half a pint each or boiling vinegar and water, forms a gargle of exceptional suitability for relaxed tonsils and inflamed mouth and throat.

For external application, cayenne is a valuable rubefacient, producing a rapid and durable effect. without possessing strong tendency to vesication. The liniment, as described under its own heading, in Part II, is the form best adapted, and in most extensive employment as an external application. It is used to bruises, swellings, 'turn ours, sore throat, and is, indeed, suitable in all indications for a stimulating liniment where the skin is in an unbroken condition; in quinsy, putrid sore throat, and diphtheria it should be applied with considerable friction upon the outside of the throat, and a flannel bandage, moistened with the same preparation, kept in constant contact with the affected part; to sprains, rheumatic and gouty affections, neuralgic and facial pains, where the bandage cannot be used, it is applied with as great an amount of friction as the patient can bear to the affected parts three or four times or oftener during the day, but, wherever practicable, the application by means of the flannel bandage is to be preferred, as keeping the agent in constant contact with the seat of pain; for chilblain, frost-bite, and similar productions of cold, it is applied, without friction, twice a day. In severe cases of inflammation, as of the bowels, kidneys, bladder, or other parts of the system in which, as is very frequently the case, friction cannot be endured by the patient; or where, when this is not the case, it is from other causes rendered inadmissible, recourse is to be had to the application by means of flannels, but it is found to considerably augment the quickness of its action to make the application by means of flannels previously brought to as great a state of heat as can be endured by the patient with comfort. During its external application it is always to be remembered that a copious internal employment of cayenne will materially aid in the removal of the inflammation.

In many cases, indications are found for both external and internal employment contemporaneously. Official preparations: Linimentum Capsici, Linimentum Myrrhae Composita, Pilula Aloes et Rhei, Pilula Anthemidis Composita, Pilula Asafoetidae Composita, Pilula Lobeliae, Composita, Pulvis Compositae, Pulvis Carui Composita, Pulvis Inulae Composita, Pulvis Taraxaci Composita, Tinctura Capsici.

CAROTA:
WILD CARROT. SAXIFRAGE.
DAUCUS CAROTA. THE WHOLE PLANT.

Stimulant and diuretic; herb, root, flowers and seeds possessing similar properties; the seed, however, contains some amount of carminative property not possessed by the other portions of the plant. The entire plant is generally used, as a whole, without discrimination between its different parts. It may be given in decoction or infusion. As a diuretic it is highly valued, and it receives considerable employment in gravel, stone, stricture, and similar obstructions of the bladder and urinary passages. In all obstructions of the urinary organs it is most successfully employed, both in its individual capacity and in combination with other agents; it cleanses and imparts tone to the kidneys and bladder, removing foreign substances, and inducing, where necessary, copious urinary evacuation. It would appear capable also as a successful employment in mucous discharges from the bladder, resulting from debility of that organ in particular, or from a debilitated condition of the system generally. In stricture it is of exceptional service, being employed for this indication to the greatest advantage; it is perhaps, in most cases of stricture; to be preferred in combination with an agent similar in its properties to itself; a combination in frequent use is carrot and pellitory-of-the-wall, an equal quantity of each being employed; this offers a good medicine in urinary calculus and gravel, and in all kidney and urinary difficulties, but in stricture and retention of urine it is most admirable remedy. Carrot is well adapted, in all indications for a combined stimulant and diuretic impression, its action so far from being confined to the local complaints for which, it is primarily exhibited, being observed upon the stomach, removing coldness and flatulence, and exerting a general stimulating influence upon the whole organism, but being nowhere noticeable in such degree as in the region of the kidneys. It is especially useful in those cases in which the least movement of the back, as in stooping, is accomplished only with severe pain, a condition produced by over-exertion in lifting, walking, from falls, bruises, or other undue exertion or accident involving that part of the body.

CARUI:
CARRAWAY.
CARUM CARUI. . THE UNEXPANDED FLOWER BUD.

Carraway is a pleasant stomachic and carminative, possessing some amount of tonic power; the principal amount of employment given to it is as a corrigent or corrective to unpleasant and griping medicines; the infusion, however, forms a useful exhibition where, in an emergency, a carminative or stimulant impression is called for; spasm's, colic, flatulence, griping, and coldness, and debility of the stomach and digestive organs, are all indications, in answer to which it is well qualified to exert a useful influence, whether exhibited in its separate capacity or in conjunction with other agents. For the flatulence and griping occurring in infants and young children the infusion is of extreme value; and recourse may be had to it, in most cases with certainty of beneficial result in any emergency.

In debilitated conditions of the digestive system it is of extreme value, and is suitably employed in the capacity of a corrigent to medicines designed to meet such indications, and is adapted indeed in individual employment to cases more recent in their origin. A useful general medicine for children is supplied by the subjoined formula:-Take of bayberry, raspberry leaves, and rhubarb, each, half an ounce, boil in one and a half pints of water to one pint, and immediately strain upon; one ounce of caraway seeds; keep it covered in such a manner, as to prevent the escape of steam, for ten minutes, keeping up the heat by allowing the vessel to, remain in a sufficiently warm position and again strain upon twelve ounces or sugar, dissolve the sugar, and afterwards allow it to cool. This medicine is useful in most complaints of infants; it is, given in the dose of a fluid, drachm, repeated as is requisite. It is given in colic, fever, thrush, ulcerated mouth, and disordered stomach, and bowels, as well as in the griping accompanying the latter complaints, or from other causes. Official preparations: Pulvis, Carui Composita, Pulvis HydraStidis Composita, Pulvis Piperis Composita.

CARYOPHYLLUM:
CLOVES,
CARYOPHYLLUS AROMATICUS. THE UNEXPANDED FLOWER BUD.

This is, perhaps, the most valuable aromatic stimulant in employment in medicine, and is eligible for exhibition in all the indications for aromatics, antispasmodics, and stimulants. It is most generally used as an adjuvant to unpleasant medicines, to correct any griping, or nausea attendant upon their operation, and as a combination with other medicines designed to relieve sickness. and vomiting. In atonic debility of the stomach and digestive apparatus, the simple infusion is frequently sufficient in itself to answer the more urgent indications; where a similar atonic condition exists, accompanied with flatulence, griping pains, and spasms, it is given with most satisfactory results, and is, in all more acute cases, to be implicitly relied upon. It is also a valuable agent in forming an aromatic combination with astringents in diarrhoea, dysentery, and cholera, affording in this mode of employment one of the most suitable remedies for relieving the pain, and preventing further collection of wind in the stomach and intestines. In the vomiting of pregnancy, it is at once effectual and safe; for this purpose it has with advantage been combined with poplar, the powdered articles being employed in equal quantities, which, when kept ready for use, should be contained in accurately stoppered bottles. The dose of this powder is twenty grains, which is given upon the appearance of the first symptoms of vomiting or internal disturbance; it may be given in any convenient vehicle, or in the form of infusion, care being taken in the latter case that it is prepared in a covered vessel. Official preparations: Pulvis Bistortae Composita, Tinctura Rhei.

CASCARILLA :
CASCARILLA.
CROTON ELUTERIA. THE BARK.

An aromatic bitter tonic. It offers a useful exhibition in some forms of dyspepsia and weakness of the stomach, and in chronic bronchial affections. It is given in infusion. It forms one of the most admirable tonics for employment during convalescence from fevers which can possibly be desired, and may always for this purpose be given with certainty of beneficial result; it is also useful in flatulence and colic, and finds its principal. employment in atonic dyspepsia, chronic diarrhoea, and affections of the bronchii. In the last-mentioned class of disease it is peculiarly useful in the prevention of undue accumulation of mucus, in addition to strengthening and giving tone to the lungs and respiratory apparatus. Owing to a pleasant aroma it possesses, cascarilla is much used by smokers and manufacturers as a flavouring agent to tobacco; but it is stated by some writers that when smoked, even in minute quantities, it produces vertigo and violent head-pain. This statement is contradicted by others. Our own experience is not to the effect that such results follow its employment for this purpose, as although we have known it freely used in this manner-we have not heard of any such symptoms resulting from its use.

CATECHU:
CATECHU.
ACACIA CATECHU. AN EXTRACT PREPARED PRINCIPALLY FROM
THE WOOD.

Catechu is tonic and astringent, receiving employment principally for its astringency. It offers a good medicine in diarrhoea, debilitated states of the stomach and bowels, of the urinary and generative organs, and in passive haemorrhages, relaxed condition of the uvula and tonsils, and in ulcerated mouth and throat.

A most efficient and, at the same time, convenient method of employment, especially in the last-mentioned affections, and cankered gums, loose teeth, and, as an astringent, for the throat, is to place a small quantity in the mouth, allowing it to dissolve, and swallowing the dissolved particles. It may be administered in substance or infusion, the latter form being preferred in diarrhoea, leucorrhoea, and haemorrhages; in other complaints either form will be found equally eligible for exhibition. In discharges from the uterus and bladder it forms one of the most reliable medicines in employment; the infusion forming also a valuable injection in leucorrhoea and discharges from the vagina, as well as being one of the most serviceable remedies for internal employment in these disorders. Catechu exerts a fine astringent and tonic influence upon the whole extent of the urinary and genital region, and is well fitted for chronic debility of, and discharges from these organs.

CENTAUREA:
BLESSED THISTLE. HOLY THISTLE. SPOTTED THISTLE. .
CENTAUREA BENEDICTA. .THE WHOLE HERB, GATHERED WHEN
THE FLOWERS ARE BURSTING.

The separate actions of tonic, stimulant, and diaphoretic and emetic, may all be produced by the different modes of employment adopted to secure the different actions desired from the plant. The cold infusion is extremely valuable in weak and debilitated conditions of the stomach and as a tonic, for which it is eminently adapted. The warm infusion forms one of the most useful diaphoretics to which employment can be given; but it is chiefly to promote the secretion of milk in the breasts of nursing women that it is employed, and it is one of the most useful and best adapted medicines to the purpose which can be used where from whatever cause, the secretion is scanty in quantity, or deficient in quality, as indicated by the appearance of the infant, and other symptoms. The warm infusion scarcely ever fails to procure a proper supply. The strong infusion or decoction in large doses, acts as a strong emetic, producing copious vomiting, with little pain and inconvenience. The latter preparation has been asserted beneficial as an alterative, but, for obvious reasons, is not used for the purpose.

CENTAURIUM .
CENTAURY.
ERYTHROEA CENTAURIUM. THE WHOLE HERB.

Centaury is an excellent bitter tonic, of great value in jaundice, and in liver and bilious complaints; it is equally adapted for separate exhibition and for combination with other medicines. It is used extensively in jaundice, and with uniformly good results. It is generally exhibited in severe and chronic cases in combination with other agents. A good formula for its administration is: Take of centaury, dandelion, barberry, each half an ounce; boil in two pints of water to one pint; strain, and give in the usual dose. This is a reliable formula for liver complaints and jaundice. In certain cases of biliousness it will be found advisable to give the medicine some half-hour before taking food, in order to better prevent the over-secretion of bile, and its consequent results. Upon some constitutions centaury exerts a slightly laxative action. When a sufficiently active condition of the bowels is not produced by its single action, other means, of course, are to be resorted to, in order to effect this object. Where this is necessary the addition of goldenseal to the infusion, or the separate exhibition of mandrake, will sufficiently meet this indication. Centaury may be given in decoction or in infusion .

CETRARIA:
ICELAND MOSS.
CETRARIA, ISLANDICUS. THE WHOLE LICHEN

Iceland moss is an admirable, demulcent and contains besides considerable tonic power. It is given in the form of decoction, which is made by boiling one ounce of the moss in a pint of water for fifteen minutes, when it is at once strained and allowed to cool. Milk may be added to this to suit the palate; or milk may with advantage be substituted for water in the preparation of the decoction. In cases of extreme debility of the system, generally, the latter mode will frequently be preferred after the first experience of its effects. The former decoction is useful both as a medicine and diet drink; the latter preparation being used, it is almost unnecessary to state, only for the purposes of a diet drink, being for this purpose eminently adapted. In febrile diseases, coughs, pulmonary complaints, all affections of the mucous surfaces, and in spitting of blood, diarrhoea, leucorrhoea, and other diseases of debilitating tendencies, its usefulness has been abundantly proved.

In pulmonary consumption, and consumption of the bowels, it is extensively used, and its employment is also attended with the best results in the weakness induced by protracted discharges of purulent matter, as in the case of abscesses, &c., where the period of discharge is so long continued as to undermine the general health of the patient. It is so perfectly safe that no limit need be placed upon the amount of the decoction consumed.

CHELIDONIUM: .
CELANDINE.
CHELIDONIUM MAJUS. THE WHOLE HERB GATHERED WHILE
FLOWERING

Celandine is alterative, diaphoretic, diuretic, and a strong cathartic. It is used in jaundice with good results; and is also serviceable in eczematous affections. In the treatment of the worst forms of scurvy it has, at different times, attracted considerable attention, having been given with asserted benefit; it seems from some cause, however, to have fallen lately into comparative disuse. The properties of a vulnerary have been attributed to it, and, as such, it is yet in some districts in repute in popular practice. The infusion is of some value as an external application in soreness .of the eyes and defects of vision. The juice of the plant, which is acrid, and unsuitable for internal employment, is usefully applied to the removal of corns and warts, care being taken in its application that the juice is not allowed to touch or remain upon the hands or adjoining surfaces. It is applied to the substance desired to be removed once in twenty-four hours. An ointment is prepared from the leaves and flowers, and forms a suitable external application for piles.

CHELONE:
BALMONY.
CHELONE GLABRA. THE WHOLE HERB.

Balmony is a useful tonic, stimulant, and laxative. It has received employment with the utmost satisfaction and success in indigestion, flatulence, and weakness and debility of the stomach and adjacent organs; upon the liver it exerts a peculiarly fine action, and is, in diseases of that organ, jaundice, bilious affections, sickness, and congestion of extreme efficacy, and is of especial value in those cases accompanied with constipation of the - bowels. Should an over-activity of the bowels be induced, it may be necessary in some cases to exhibit tormentil in combination with this agent. Tormentil is particularly eligible for this purpose, as it does not in any appreciable degree interfere with the action of the agent, except in relation to the bowels. Where the objection to its employ-ment of weak bowels is not present, balmony offers one of the finest medicines for this class of complaints in the entire materia medica, being suitable for exhibition alike as an individual agent or in combination with other medicines for similar purposes. It is also well fitted for combination with any medicine, with a view to impart to it, together with its other effects, that of a regular action of the bowels, without producing violent purging, in cases of obstinate constipation. Official preparation: Pulvis Bistortae Composita

CHENOPODIUM:,
WORMSEED.
CHENOPODIUM ANTHELMINTICUM. THE FRUIT.

A valuable anthelmintic, especially adapted to the extermination of the round worm in children. It possesses a peculiarly disagreeable flavour, and is most offensive to the taste, this rendering it, frequently, extremely difficult of administration. It is given to the best advantage in substance, suspended in honey, syrup, or treacle; the dose should be repeated for three or four days, night and morning, when it is to be followed by the exhibition of a cathartic. The dose of the powdered fruit is, for a child, from twenty to thirty grains; for an adult, from one to two drachms. The expressed oil is occasionally employed as an anthelmintic, but owing to its extreme nausea, and the distress frequently following its exhibition, the substance is to be preferred.

CHENOPODIUM OLIDUM:
ARRACK. STINKING ARRACK. STINKING GOOSEFOOT.
CHENOPODIUM OLIDUM. THE WHOLE HERB.

Arrack is antispasmodic and emmenagogue. The infusion is useful in flatulence, colic, weakness of the stomach, and similar indications. Its chief employment, however, is in uterine disorders.

In suppressed and painful menstruation, uterine spasm, and in ulceration and morbid conditions generally of the uterine system, it is capable of employment, being used in all these cases with most gratifying results. In prolapsus uteri and leucorrhoea it is used as a fomentation to the uterine region, and, where necessary, as an injection also. It has been asserted of value in sterility. It seems now to be rapidly falling into disuse from some cause, most probably that of its unpleasant odour and taste; it is, notwithstanding, of extreme value in female disorders, and should not easily be allowed to fall from the list of medicines.

**CHIMPAHILLA:
PRINCE'S PINE
CHIMAPHILLA UMBELLITUM. THE WHOLE HERB.**

Possessing similar properties to uva ursi, Prince's pine is employed for similar indications. It may, in cases of emergency, where that is not at hand, be substituted for uva ursi. The latter, however, when obtainable is in all cases to be preferred. Prince's pine is given in infusion, and is employed with decided advantage in gravel, stone, affections of the kidneys, and urinary difficulties generally; in all these complaints it procures speedy relief, and, in all cases where a possibility of cure exists, ultimate cure. In addition to the properties possessed by it in common with uva ursi, it is also a fine alterative, and of good service in skin diseases, impurities of the blood, and obstructions of the circulatory system, having been successfully employed in scrofulous conditions, scurvy, and skin disorders, and also in rheumatism and affections of a gouty nature.

**CIMICIFUGA:
BLACK COHOSH.
CIMICIFUGA RACEMOSA: THE ROOT:**

Astringent, diuretic, alterative, and emmenagogue, with expectorant properties in a high degree, Cohosh finds an extensive employment in rheumatism, affections of the blood, suppressed menstruation, whooping cough, and in dropsical affections and obstructions in all parts of the system. It is given in decoction or infusion; in large doses it produces nausea and vomiting, with disturbance and pain in the stomach and bowels. In many infantile disorders it is given in the form of syrup, and is especially useful in this form, both in the whooping and ordinary coughs of children. The infusion and decoction have each been given, with results of a most satisfactory nature, in rheumatism, both in its acute and more chronic forms. In uterine disturbance, spasm of the uterus, retention of the menstrual ejaculation, and painful menstruation, it is employed to great advantage, and in the nervous derangement frequently in attendance upon these symptoms, it is also indicated. In the earlier stages of pulmonary consumption it is given with benefit, it assists in throwing off the fever and in allaying the cough and excitement; even in more advanced stages of this disease it is frequently of the utmost benefit in the inflammation so often present; it reduces the force and frequency of the pulse, at times inducing a gentle perspiration, and strengthens the whole system, exerting a most beneficial influence upon the lungs and respiratory apparatus particularly. It is given to advantage in all chest complaints, and is capable of administration under all circumstances. Its action would appear to be augmented by combination with other agents of similar properties. Official preparation: Pulvis Valerianae Composita.

**CINCHONA:
BARK. PERUVIAN BARK.
CINCHONA FLAVA. CINCHONA PALLIDA. CINCHONA
RUBRA. THE BARK.**

This is one of the finest tonics known; it possesses also, in addition to that of a tonic, febrifugent and aperient properties. It is generally employed in decoction or infusion. In large doses it has produced nausea, and, occasionally vomiting and diarrhoea, with head-pain, singing and noises in the ears, and general disturbance of the nervous system. It is valuable in the debility produced by exhausting diseases, chronic diarrhoea, protracted discharges from abscesses and wounds; in these conditions it gives tone to the whole system, strengthening the nerves and tissues throughout the entire organism, restoring the power of digestion, and inducing a healthy and natural condition of the secretory and excretory organs. It is contra-indicated, however in inflamed and irritated states of the system, its tendency under such conditions being to produce an increase rather than otherwise in the symptoms. In scrofulous affections, dropsy, confirmed indigestion, amenorrhoea, and nervous disorders, it is successfully employed; the happiest results following its exhibition in each of these different complaints. Perhaps its chief employment has, been in the treatment of intermittents, in which it is administered during the period of intermission between the febrile attacks.

Owing to its somewhat irritant disposition, it is not to be given in these cases until near the end of the attack, when it may be employed with freedom until the approach of another paroxysm, upon which its employment is to be abandoned until the subsequent period of intermission; when exhibited by this method, while communicating tone and a more vigorous action to the system, it produces a diminution and subsequent cessation of the febrile symptoms. As a remedy in dyspepsia, chronic debility, and weakness of the digestive apparatus, bark is esteemed, also, one of the most suitable of all medicinal agents; it is, perhaps, for these indications, given to the greatest advantage in infusion, except in occasional cases, where a slightly more stimulant action may be desired, when it may be administered in wine; sherry, perhaps, being the wine best adapted for the purpose: one ounce of the powdered bark is introduced into a bottle of the ordinary size, which, after maceration for a period of six or eight days, is strained through fine muslin; the dose of the wine so prepared may be generally stated at a fluid ounce three or four times during the day, this quantity, of course, may be augmented or decreased, as is found necessary to suit the indications calling for its employment. This preparation possesses decided advantages over the quinine wine; the indications for its employment are the same, and its action equally effective in their removal, while none of the unpleasant symptoms subsequent to the exhibition of quinine, in any of its forms, are experienced; where a somewhat prolonged employment of the medicine is required, the wine, medicated with the Peruvian bark, is therefore to be preferred in all cases to that in which quinine is the active ingredient. A useful medicine for general weakness and debility, and the nervous derangements arising out of these conditions, also in jaundice and other complaints occurring as a consequence of a debilitated condition of the digestive organs, is composed from the formula here given. Take of Peruvian, gentian, orange peel, columbo, and liquorice, each one quarter ounce, cayenne pods, six; boil in one and a half pints of water to one; cool, and strain. This is given in the dose of from one to two fluid ounces four times a day. The same ingredients, having been previously reduced to powder, may be given in wine in the same proportions and dose as already proposed for the separate exhibition of bark. Peruvian is suitable for combination with any medicine designed to promote a tonic and deobstruent impression; indeed, for either of these indications its powers would seem to be better developed, and the results obtainable from it of more satisfactory nature when given in a judicious combination, than are those obtained from its employment as an individual agent. It is extensively employed in diseases of a wasting or debilitating nature; in the night sweats of consumption, especially, it has been successfully exhibited; for the latter indication, however, care is to be required that it is not exhibited in the presence of circumstances indicative of an irritated condition of the system in the patient; where no such indication exists, previous to its administration, it will be found a valuable agent with which to meet the prostration and worst kinds of weakness attendant upon this disease. Peruvian has also been proposed as a cure for intemperance; for this purpose it is steeped in any spirit, and given in any quantity, when the craving for drink asserts itself; it is suggested that the spirit employed should be the one to which the patient is most partial. This is asserted to produce an abhorrence of, and repugnance for, intoxicants of all kinds; but that, in order to arrive at this result, it is necessary that the patient should himself acquiesce in the treatment, and himself desire the cure, otherwise, it is asserted, the treatment is value less.

CINNAMOMUM:
CINNAMON.
CINNAMOMUM ZEYLANICUM. THE BARK.

Cinnamon possesses aromatic, stimulant, carminative, tonic, and mildly astringent properties. It is of service in spasms, flatulence, colic, and diarrhoea, but is not generally so much prescribed individually as with other medicines, having as the object of its employment its disposition to assist the action of other ingredients, and to aid in their diffusion throughout the system, to qualify any, unpleasant flavour they may possess, or to correct any tendency to griping which, in the absence of such a corrigent as is supplied by this agent, might otherwise be asserted. It is of extreme value in cold states of the stomach and debility of the digestive organs, and has been found very useful in flatulence and dyspepsia; in spasmodic attacks of wind, also, whether occurring in stomach, bowels, or elsewhere, it is successfully employed. The infusion has recently been exhibited, in small and frequent doses, in uterine haemorrhage with most satisfactory results, and at the present time it appears to be winning repute and gaining much favour in the treatment of this disorder.

In diarrhoea, more especially, perhaps, in the diarrhoea of children, cinnamon forms a most useful adjunct to astringents; a formula in constant employment in infantile diarrhoea, and which has received a most successful employment, is subjoined: Take of cinnamon, tormentil, and marshmallow, all in powder, each a quarter of an ounce; make an infusion of one pint; of this, half a fluid ounce, or more, according to the age of the patient, is given after each evacuation.

In domestic practice, in the absence of other remedies, cinnamon is given for colds, in the commencement of catarrhal complaints, and in the earlier stages of fever; for these purposes it would almost appear to be used simply as a flavouring agent to boiling milk; two or three teaspoonfuls of powdered cinnamon are put in each pint of milk, which is then boiled and drank while as hot as it can be taken; this, however, is effectual in inducing a gentle determination to the skin, which is kept up for some time without fear of further cold being taken, as is the case where a copious perspiration is resorted to. Official preparation: Pulvis Hydrastidis Composita.

CONIUM:
HEMLOCK. STINKING HEMLOCK. SPOTTED HEMLOCK.
CONIUM MACULATUM. THE HERB.

Hemlock is useful as an external application, but, although possessing a certain amount of medicinal property, should not be employed internally, other medicines equal to and of superior power to this agent, are in constant employment, and will be found described in this work, which possess none of the objectionable properties present in this plant, it being capable, in an overdose, of producing narcotic poisoning. As an external application, the decoction forms an efficient fomentation for bad and painful wounds, abscesses, and ulcers, and appears to possess a peculiar suitability to bleeding wounds and ulcers. The leaves may be applied to the same class of wounds as a poultice.

CONVALLARIA :
SOLOMON'S SEAL.
CONVALLARIA POLYGONATUM. THE ROOT.

Solomon's seal is an astringent, tonic, and demulcent. It is well adapted for leucorrhoea, immoderate menstrual evacuation, female weaknesses, and pulmonary consumption. It is given in the form of decoction, which is of a mucilaginous consistency, and, is admirably adapted for morbid discharges and their subsequent weakening effects upon the system. In profuse menstruation it is with advantage combined with comfrey root, equal proportions of each agent being employed; this offers a most serviceable combination for many complaints, but its most marked effects, perhaps, are in the weaknesses peculiar to females, whether following upon difficult labour, from undue menstrual evacuation, or other causes. The fresh root, bruised, or, if this cannot be procured, the powdered root, made into the form of poultice in the usual manner, forms a useful emollient application for piles, and in the same way is applied to bruises where extravasation of blood has taken place; in popular practice it has long been known as an efficient application to "black eye," it discusses the extravasation in a remarkably short period, removing all evidence of the blow. For this reason, it need scarcely be mentioned as having enjoyed considerable popularity among gentlemen of the "P. R."

CURCUMA. :
TURMERIC.
CURCUMA LONGA. THE ROOT.

A warm stimulant, aromatic, stomachic, and deobstruent, useful in flatulence, wind, disorders, of the stomach, and debility of the digestive apparatus; it forms an admirable medicine, but is in very little employment, except as a corrigent to unpleasant medicines, or otherwise as a flavouring agent. It may in all cases be suitably employed as a substitute for ginger, whether it is desired to be given in substance, infusion, or in any other form, as its properties are very similar to those of the latter article. In India it is most extensively used as a condiment, and enters largely into the composition of the curry powders as sold in this country. Official preparations: Pulvis Composita; Pulvis Taraxaci Composita.

CUSSO:
KOUSSO.
AYERA ANTHELMINTICA. THE FLOWERS AND UNRIPE FRUIT.

Koussou is a valuable anthelmintic. Its best effects are manifested upon the tape worm. In itself it possesses no aperient action, but appears to act upon the worms as a poison; it is, therefore, in all cases, well to follow its exhibition by that of a mild cathartic. It is given in infusion, of which half a pint is administered at bed time, the patient fasting for some six hours previous to, and during the period of its operation; this is followed, the next morning, on rising, by a moderately strong dose of senna.

Its value has been variously stated; by some practitioners it is claimed to have removed tape worm after failure with all other means, and by others to be practically valueless for the purpose; the preponderance of opinion, however, is greatly in favour of its employment in the extermination of this particular kind of worm. Official preparations: Pulvis Filicis Composita. Syrupus Spigeliae Composita.

ERYNGIUM :
ERYNGO. SEA HOLLY.
ERYNGIUM OF ALIFOLIUM. THE ROOT.

This is an aromatic, stimulant, and expectorant. It is employed in debility of the system, loss of nervous energy, and in exhaustion, hence its.. employment in consumption and other wasting diseases involving loss of nerve and brain power, with accompanying irritation. It is generally given in decoction, and is less used as a separate medicine than in combination with others; it is, nevertheless, of extreme value in its individual capacity, but its action is augmented by combination with other medicines, whether designed to meet the same, or other, indications. It promotes a free expectoration, and, possessing an aromatic principle, is very serviceable in the debility frequently attendant upon coughs of chronic standing, and the coughs of those in advanced life, with the flatulence usually in attendance upon the respiratory difficulties; and in the advanced stages of pulmonary consumption, it has been administered with great benefit in paralysis and chronic nervous diseases it is also useful; but in cases of a chronic nature a protracted employment is always necessary to bring about satisfactory results. An extremely useful medicine for nervous complaints, useful alike in simple nervousness and in the nervousness and delirium accompanying or produced by disease, is composed as follows: Take of eryngo, valerian, mistletoe, and vervain, each, half an ounce; boil in one and a half pints of water; the dose is two fluid ounces three or four times a day. In cases of extreme debility of the digestive organs. six cayenne pods or a few mustard seeds may with propriety and benefit be added. This medicine is also of value in epilepsy, and in certain forms of heart disease.

EUPATORIUM:
BONESET. THOROUGWORT.
EUPATORIUM PERFOLIATUM. THE HERB.

Boneset, in small doses, offers a mild tonic, combined with a thorough diaphoretic action; in large doses it is emetic and aperient. It is successfully employed in coughs, cold, influenza., catarrh, in fevers, and in debility of the stomach and entire extent of the digestive system. As a tonic, in weak conditions of the stomach, and dyspepsia, it is given in the form of a cold infusion. Where a diaphoretic impression is desired, the warm infusion will be most suitable, this is also the proper form of administration in fever; it has been used with success in intermittents, but is attended with still greater success in the treatment of remittent and yellow fevers, in each of which forms of disease it offers one of the most valuable medicines in employment. It was in consequence of the success attending its employment in an epidemic of fever among the settlers in a part of America, which was attended with such excruciating pain as to secure for the disease the name of "break-bone fever," that it obtained the common name by which it is most known boneset. So far as can be ascertained, this was the origin of its employment medicinally. In influenza it is of especial value; in severe cases of this complaint, the infusion should be drunk warm, in small and frequently repeated doses, the patient being meanwhile wrapped up warmly in bed; this treatment produces copious perspiration, and occasionally is found to act as an emetic; when this action occurs, the medicine is to be given less frequently, in order to prevent further nauseating effect. When at once applied to in this way at the commencement of influenza, it never fails to speedily arrest the progress of the affection. It is in extensive employment in all complaints of a catarrhal nature, cough, and difficulties in expectoration and respiration. A useful medicine in these affections is composed as follows: -Take of boneset, mouse-ear, slippery elm, and linseed, each, half an ounce; boil in two pints of water; strain, while hot, upon extract of liquorice (Spanish juice), two -ounces; when this is dissolved, allow it to cool. This is given in the usual dose; it has been extensively used in the treatment of all complaints of this nature. In dyspepsia, flatulence, and similar affections of the digestive organs, boneset is employed with great benefit; in all cases indicating a mild tonic, it is well adapted and in the dyspepsia and debility of the stomach peculiar to persons of advanced life, it is especially suitable; this may, indeed, be said of it in all cases where a tonic is required, but where a medicine of greater stimulant propensities would be inadmissible, in the latter case, that of old persons, the warm infusion will even, as a tonic, be found more effectual as imparting a degree of warmth, and being, consequently, more adapted to the removal of the flatulent symptoms. Boneset is with advantage combined with other medicines in cases of loss of vitality and debility in any of the organs of the body.

The warm infusion also offers a valuable adjuvant to, and vehicle for, the exhibition of emetics; it is given in the mode usually adopted with this class of agents, for this purpose, in frequent doses, which are continued until a nauseating effect is produced; when this object is gained, the emetic is given, and followed by a similar succession of doses, at short intervals, of the warm infusion, until vomiting occurs ; when employed by this method, all traces of the operation of the emetic are removed, and the system is left without the least debility or lassitude, and in a perfectly healthy condition. It may be given in all cases, either as an individual remedy, or in any combination with' any medicine. Official preparation: Pulvis Inulae Composita.

EUPHRASIA :
EYEBRIGHT. BIRDEYE. BRIGHTEYE.
EUPHRASIA OFFICINALIS. THE WHOLE HERB.

Eyebright is tonic, and mildly astringent. The infusion forms a gentle stomachic, and is useful where a mild impression upon the digestive organs is desired ; it has been asserted useful in strengthening the eyes, but for internal employment it has no genuine claim whatever to the statement. For use externally, it is one of the most valuable applications to which resort can be had for weakness of sight, defects of vision, and inflammation of the eyes; it would therefore seem probable that the mode of employment has been misunderstood, and that it was under this misunderstanding that the statement regarding its internal administration for these purposes was made. Perhaps no other article in the whole materia medica has been so extensively employed, nor with such, uniformly good results, in treatment of eye affections. An infusion of the strength of one ounce of the herb to a pint should be used, and the eyes bathed with this three or four times, or oftener, during the day. In cases of a painful nature, it will be desirable to use the bath more frequently, until the pain is removed, and in these cases, too, it will be found an advantage to apply it to the eye while warm. In ordinary cases an application three times a day will generally be sufficient, and it will not be necessary to make the application while warm. In cases of long standing, a continued employment is necessary to the production of a permanently good result. Official preparation: Linimentum Euphrasiae.

FILIX:
MALE FERN.
ASPIDIUM FILIX-MAS. THE ROOT.

The properties of this root are tonic, astringent, and vermifuge; the two former ones being so little marked, that it is as a vermifuge only that it obtains employment. Perhaps no other medicine. has been so long, nor so extensively, used against worms, as the one under consideration; it is employed in the extermination of worms of all kinds. It is exhibited in substance generally, the dose varying from two to four drachms, which is best administered in honey or syrup, but may be given in any other vehicle which may better suit the fancy of the patient. Although in some cases advisable, it is not generally necessary to follow up this exhibition with that of a purgative; where, however, it is deemed advisable to take this course, senna will be found equal to any agent for the purpose. These two ingredients, indeed, may be usefully combined in the form of a powder, the proportions proper to this being two drachms of fern and one drachm of senna; this is exhibited, where the aperient action is desired, in the same dose, and by means of a similar vehicle, as employed in the former instance; the result of this combination is of a more satisfactory nature than that following the separate exhibition of either agent. Official preparation: Pulvis Filicis Composita.

FOENICULUM :
FENNIL.
FOENICULUM VULGARE. THE FRUIT.

Aromatic, carminative, and stomachic, the employment of fennil is confined to the same indications as for anise, carraway, and other aromatics. The weak infusion, in frequent doses, is useful in wind, flatulence, and difficulty in digestion; for wind and other infantile complaints, when accompanied with flatulence and griping, the infusion is of the greatest utility. As a combination with purgative medicines, especially with senna and rhubarb, it is well adapted, as, while it exerts no strong stimulant action, it effectually corrects any tendency to griping, and for this purpose is preferred, as an adjuvant to this particular medicine, to other agents of its class.

FUMARIA :
FUMITORV.
FUMARIA OFFICINALIS. THE WHOLE HERB.

Fumitory is a gentle tonic, alterative and diaphoretic, and, in large doses. laxative and diuretic. It receives its chief employment in disorders of the liver and costiveness of the bowels; and, as an alterative, in skin diseases and some forms of gout and scurvy; and would seem to merit a larger amount of attention than is at present given to it. It is given in decoction or infusion, in the ordinary dose.

GALANGA:
GALANGAL.
AN UNDETERMINED SPECIES OF GALANGA. THE ROOT.

An aromatic, stimulant, and useful astringent. It is useful in wind, spasms, diarrhoea, cholera, and pain in the stomach and bowels. It possesses considerable tonic power, and is exceedingly useful in weakness of digestion and debility of the stomach. It is given in substance, decoction, or infusion; the dose of the powder is from ten to thirty grains. In severe cases of diarrhoea and similar complaints, the decoction or infusion should always be preferred, which should be of the strength of two ounces of the root to each pint, the dose being two fluid ounces after each evacuation. The powder forms a useful errhine to promote the action of sneezing and discharge from the head, and is also of value in polypus. Official preparation: Pulvis Tormentillae Composita.

GALIUM:
CLIVERS. HERIF. GOOSEGRASS.
GALIUM APARINE. THE WHOLE HERB.

Clivers is diuretic, alterative, and aperient; operating with considerable power upon the urinary secretion and urinary organs, and capable, in sufficiently large doses, of producing copious diuresis and watery discharges through the bowels, and is therefore employed in dropsical complaints with a great amount of success. As an alterative it is given to advantage in scurvy and skin diseases and eruptions generally. Its chief use is, doubtless, as an alterative; and, owing largely to its being so well known and commonly met with by all roadsides in the country, it has gained an extensive reputation. and is so employed with the utmost success. In consequence of its strong diuretic properties, care must be taken that it is not given where any tendency to diabetes is exhibited. A wash made from clivers is said to be useful for sunburn and freckles; it is prepared by placing in an earthenware vessel, with a cover, a sufficient quantity of the herb, the fresh herb being preferred for this purpose, to fill it when well pressed in, as much cold rain water as the vessel will contain then poured upon it, and the whole allowed, to remain, covered for five days, after which the clear liquid is to be poured off, and the remaining contents of the vessel put into a muslin or close canvas bag, this is subjected to pressure, in order to obtain the remaining liquid, which is added to that previously obtained, and the two liquids mixed together. This is applied in the usual manner, by means of a sponge or soft cloth, to the surfaces sunburnt or otherwise requiring its application.

GAUTHERIA:
WINTERGREEN.
GAUTHERIA PROCUMBENS. THE LEAVES.

Wintergreen is an aromatic, stimulant, and astringent. It has been used with considerable success in diarrhoea, but otherwise does not appear to possess any special advantages which are not possessed in greater degree by other astringents. As a stimulant it has been used in some affections of the skin, principally in combination with alteratives, and for this purpose it would appear, to be well adapted. It is to be borne in mind, however, that wintergreen is unsuitable for employment where fever or inflammation is present, as in these cases an aggravation of these symptoms is produced by its action. The distilled oil is of value, as an application to the ears for deafness, and has frequently succeeded, after years of seemingly incurable deafness, in restoring a sound sense of hearing. When the internal parts of the ear are uninjured, it may be relied upon with perfect confidence to work out a satisfactory result; in cases of long standing a somewhat protracted employment will occasionally be required, but given that the organ itself is in an uninjured condition, it never fails in the attainment of the desired result.

GENTIANA:
GENTIAN.
GENTIANA LUTEA. THE ROOT.

Gentian is a fine bitter tonic and corroborant; it excites the appetite, gives aid to digestion, and, by adding force to the circulation of the blood, is productive of warmth in the system.

It is useful in all cases of debility of the digestive organs, and in all indications for the employment of tonics. It may be given in the various forms of infusion, decoction, tincture, pill, and, extract. In dyspepsia and jaundice it is of extreme value, and receives extensive employment; in most cases it will be found best, with a view to its more efficient administration, to make the addition of a small proportion of some aromatic agent, as, in certain conditions of the stomach, in the absence of such an ingredient, a considerable amount of uneasiness, and occasionally pain, is produced. In the treatment of intermittents, also, it receives successful employment.

Exhibited in large doses, gentian will frequently create a feeling of oppression at the stomach, with considerable irritation in the region of the bowels; it is advisable, therefore, that it is not given in any quantity to exceed that of two fluid ounces three times during the day, of a decoction of the strength of one ounce of the root in each pint of the preparation; the dose, when given in substance, is from two to three drachms, which is exhibited at similar intervals to those for the decoction. The cold infusion has very much to recommend it to the notice of practitioners; in cases of debility and flatulence, and in certain other affections of a similar nature, it is said to produce even better results than are obtained from the ordinary modes of its employment. Official preparations: Extractum Gentianae. Pulvis Gentianae Composita. Tinctura Gentianae Composita.

**GERANIUM:
CRANESBILL.
GERANIUM MACULATUM. THE ROOT.**

Cranesbill is tonic, antiseptic, and powerfully astringent. It is employed to give tone to the stomach, in diarrhoea, dysentery, diabetes, leucorrhoea, and other abnormal discharges, and in bleeding from the lungs, stomach, and other organs; it is also useful as a styptic application. It may be administered in decoction or infusion. To the earlier stages of diarrhoea, dysentery, and to infantile cholera and colic, it is not so well adapted; but in the more advanced and chronic forms of these complaints, cranesbill offers a most effective remedy. In cases of abnormally frequent evacuation it will be of advantage to employ a small dose, which is to be repeated after each evacuation of the bowels; in those cases in which the bowels seem to have lost their action, and the stool is watery, without colour or consistence, and where the discharge is accompanied with loss of blood, it will be found of immense advantage to combine cranesbill with an equal proportion of marshmallow; for these purposes an infusion from the combined articles in the state of powder should be preferred, as being more suitable than the decoction from the root in its crude form. Cranesbill is a valuable agent in diabetes and incontinence of urine, both as a separate exhibition and for combination with other medicines. For employment in combination with other ingredients some amount of judgment and experience in its employment is necessary, as many combinations into which it enters as the principal ingredient are of less reliability than is its employment in its separate capacity. In haemorrhages it is a useful agent, its influence being manifest in a very short period after exhibition, producing speedy diminution and ultimate cessation of the flux. Imparting an excellent tone to the whole system, and strengthening and invigorating the stomach, bowels, kidneys, and entire viscera, it produces no unpleasant nor unlooked for symptoms. In leucorrhoea it forms a trust-worthy and valuable medicine, answering to the fullest extent the indications for which it is given, and is also most suitable as an injection in the same complaint; it is well adapted to the most chronic forms of this disorder. It is also used in quinsy, sore and inflamed throat, and ulceration of the mouth and fauces, with eminent success, both as a medicine and in the form of a gargle. Besides its value as an internal remedy, it possesses equal qualifications for external employment. As an astringent wash for foul ulcers and sores, it is in all cases suitable; it cleanses and astringes the wound, at the same time promoting the healing process. For bleeding wounds the powder is sprinkled upon the surface of the wound, the effects of this application being immediately visible; in the same way it is used for indolent turn ours and wounds of a similar kind, exhibiting no appearance of healing to excite this action. Cranesbill herb has been accorded some measure of employment, but has fallen into disuse; it possesses somewhat similar properties to those of the root, but in a far inferior degree.

**GEUM:
AVENS.SWEET AVON.
GEUM RIVALE. THE WHOLE HERB.**

Avens is tonic, gently astringent, and antiseptic. It is employed successfully in passive haemorrhages, leucorrhoea, diarrhoea, and such forms of disease as call for the employment of a mild astringent tonic; it is also useful in some skin affections. The form of infusion is the most suitable one for its administration.

Like others of its class, it is extensively used in spring rashes and affections of this nature in the form of "herb beer" and, owing to its extremely agreeable flavour-by same thought to resemble that of coffee-it is employed frequently as a beverage in substitution for tea and coffee. A grateful, and at the same time beneficial, substitute far that article is prepared as follows: Take of avens, agrimony, and burnet, equal quantities; cut them small, and mix well together. This will be found very useful to those stomachs which, from disease or other causes, are unable to tolerate tea, and, while farming so. excellent a substitute far that article, it will be found to possess a flavour similar to that of tea. This preparation is valuable as a beverage in dyspepsia, liver complaints, and nervous disorders; as not only does it not produce the unpleasant after-effects following the use of imparted tea, as wind, nervousness, prostration, and debility, but it. acts as a tonic upon the entire system.

GLECOMA:
GROUND IVY. GILL-OVER-THE-GROUND.
GLECOMA HEDERACAEA. THE WHOLE HERB.

Ground ivy possesses vulnerary, alterative, tonic, pectoral, and errhine properties. It is useful in pulmonary complaints and was at one period highly esteemed as a remedy in consumption; but, whatever reputation it may have once obtained for this purpose, it has given place to. the many medicines, of superior power to itself, now in constant employment in this disease. It is, nevertheless, a valuable remedy in chronic pectoral and urinary complaints. Where a tonic impression up an the kidneys is required it would appear to possess peculiar suitability, and is well adapted to all kidney complaints. The infusion, in which form it is given internally, is also. used with advantage as a wash to sore and weak eyes. The powdered herb has been applied upon the surface of indolent wounds as a stimulant, and is also useful as an errhine.

GLYCRRHIZA:
LIQUORICE. LICORICE.
GLYCRRHIZA GLABRA. THE ROOT.

Liquorice root is demulcent, expectorant, nutrient, and slightly laxative. It is well adapted far, and extensively employed in, catarrhal affections and irritated conditions of the mucous membrane of the bowels and urinary passages. It has long enjoyed an extensive reputation, both in domestic and regular practice, in the treatment of coughs, hoarseness, and pectoral complaints generally. The usual method of employment is that of a decoction of the strength of two ounces of the ratio in each pint. Advantage may also be taken of its flavour to cover that of unpleasant medicines; for the same reason it is used as a sweetmeat among children, and it is frequently eaten, in preference to taking the decoction, when required as a medicine. It is valuable in sore throat and those affections of the throat and chest to which public speakers, singers, and others, are peculiarly subject; a small piece of the root being allowed to remain in the mouth during the period of vocal exertion will frequently act as a preventive from these affections, and is by many preferred to the use of lozenges for the purpose. The extract of liquorice, or Spanish juice, may be used for the same purpose as the root, and in same cases is certainly preferable to the crude article.

An old cough medicine, which has been in use far a length of time, and from the employment of which much good has resulted, is made by boiling four ounces of linseed with two ounces of liquorice, in four pints of water to two, upon cooling it is strained, and may be taken in any quantity; if desired, one ounce of the extract, previously mentioned, may be substituted for the liquorice, in this case the extract must first be dissolved in a portion of the water, and added after the straining process, instead of being boiled, as in the case of the root, with the linseed.

This preparation is no less useful as a demulcent drink, for its soothing influence in irritated conditions of the mucous surfaces of the throat, stomach, bowels, and other organs, than as a medicine in coughs and chest affections. Official preparation of the extract: Tinctura Aloes. Official preparations of the root: Decoctum Sarzae Composita. Pilula Anthemidis. Pulvis Inulae Composita. Pulvis Myricae Composita. Pulvis-Piperis Composita. Pulvis Sarzae Composita. Pulvis Taraxaci-Composita.

GNAPHALIUM:
MOUSE-EAR. MOUSE-EAR HAWKWEED.
GNAPHALIUM ULIGINOSUM. THE WHOLE HERB.

A useful sudorific, tonic, and expectorant; employed in affections of the stomach, liver, and bowels, and in coughs and lung affections; in the latter affections being principally suitable to those of infants and young children.

It is usually administered in infusion or syrup, but may be given in decoction. The infusion is serviceable in jaundice, indigestion, and other disorders of the liver and stomach. The chief employment of mouse-ear is in the whooping cough of children, in which, however, the form of syrup is better adapted; in this form it is found of extreme efficacy in children's chest complaints, and has recently received a greater amount of attention than formerly. In combination with other expectorants, it is found useful in other pectoral affections than those peculiar to childhood. A good medicine, which of late has gained some reputation in old standing coughs, lung diseases, and consumption, is composed from the following formula: Take of mouse-ear two ounces, liquorice one ounce, linseed and slippery elm, of each, half an ounce; boil in four pints of water to three; strain. It may be sweetened or not, as may better suit the fancy of the patient, or be deemed the more suitable; honey is, perhaps, more suitable than sugar as the sweetening agent where this is desired. Mouse-ear has also been used in gravel and stone in the bladder, for which it would appear to possess some qualification.

GRANATUM FRUCTUS CORTEX:
POMEGRANATE RIND.
PUNICA GRANATUM. THE RIND OF THE FRUIT.
GRANATUM RADICIS CORTEX:
POMEGRANATE ROOT.
PUNICA GRANATUM. THE BARK OF THE ROOT.

The rind of the fruit is astringent, and is employed in infusion; in this form it is useful in diarrhoea, and in some passive haemorrhages, but is little used except as an injection in leucorrhoea, for which it is very serviceable. The powder is also used as a sternutatory. The root bark is an excellent vermifuge and cathartic; its chief employment being in the treatment of tape worm, against which it has been in prominent use in India for a considerable length of time. The powder has been exhibited in substance, but the better mode of exhibition is to employ the decoction; this is prepared by boiling one ounce of the bark in two pints of water to one; of this, two fluid ounces should be directed to be taken every half-hour until the whole pint is consumed; this may be repeated daily for a period of three or four days, when so prolonged an employment is necessary; the only caution requisite to be exercised in its employment is in the extent of its action upon the bowels, its action in this respect being that of an active cathartic; occasionally the purging is accompanied with sickness, but the occurrence of the latter symptom is not to be feared, it generally ceasing without the employment of any special means of treatment; a certain amount of purgation is necessary to its action as a vermifuge, the worm being generally voided in stool.

GUAIAECUM LIGNUM
GUAIAECUM. WOOD OF LIFE.
GUAIAECUM OFFICINALIS. THE WOOD.

Guaiacum wood, or, as it is more commonly known, raspings, is a stimulant diaphoretic. The infusion or decoction are the usual methods of its employment, but it is seldom given separately, being exhibited generally in combination with alterative medicines. It is useful in scurvy, scrofula, and diseases of the blood of a chronic nature. Official preparations: Decoctum Sarzae Composita. Pulvis Sarzae Composita.

GUAIAECI RESINA.
GUM GUAIAECUM.
GUAIAECUM OFFICINALIS. THE CONCRETE JUICE.

The gum is a stimulant and alterative, and is successfully employed to produce copious perspiration, the patient being kept warm, preferably in bed, during its operation. It has, perhaps, acquired a more extended employment in the treatment of rheumatism than in any other direction. It is usually given in the form of tincture, or in substance; for the latter method of exhibition the pill form is found most convenient. It possesses but slight action upon the bowels, although in large doses it has occasionally exhibited a purgative action. Official preparation: Pilula Sarzae Composita.

HAMAMELIS:
WITCH HAZEL.
HAMAMELIS VIRGINICA. THE BARK.

Witch hazel is tonic, astringent, discutient, and is also said to possess sedative properties.

It was brought into notice by the Indians, by whom it was much employed as a poultice to painful tumours and other swellings, and for inflammations generally. For inflammation of the eyes especially, and of the eyelids, it is useful both in the form of a poultice, and the infusion as a lotion. For internal employment, it is given in decoction or infusion, and is principally employed as an astringent, being of extreme value in haemorrhage from the stomach and lungs, and in obstinate diarrhoea, profuse menstruation, and leucorrhoea. It is also useful as a bath in protrusion of the bowel, and the strong decoction as an injection in prolapsus and debility of the uterus. The powdered bark is employed as an errhine for bleeding from the nose, for which it is of extreme efficacy. Witch hazel might certainly be accorded, with benefit, a more extensive employment than is at present given to it.

HEPATICÆ:
LIVERWORT. LIVERLEAF.
HEPATICÆ TRILOBÆ. THE LEAF.

Liverwort is deobstruent, pectoral, and slightly astringent. The infusion is of service in coughs, cold, indigestion, and liver disorders, and has been successfully employed in bleeding from the lungs, and in old coughs. By some it has been considered of great efficacy in jaundice and obstructions of the liver, and, indeed, would appear to have received its names, both botanical and common, under some such impression; but, although it possesses some slight action as a tonic, it is in the slighter disorders only of the liver in which any really successful issue succeeds its exhibition.

HYDRASTIS:
GOLDENSEAL.
HYDRASTIS CANADENSIS. THE ROOT.

This is a tonic, cholagogue, and laxative, constituting one of the most valuable medicines, as a corroborant, in employment. Hepatic disorders, biliousness, costiveness, sickness, and sick-headache, are among the many indications for its exhibition. As a remedy for habitual constipation, a dose of from one to two drachms of the powder is given, in any convenient vehicle; this is an exhibition of the utmost value in the constipation frequently in attendance upon haemorrhoids, and which is capable of giving to the practitioner no small amount of trouble. When a stronger impression upon the alvine secretions than that afforded by the individual employment of this agent is desired, goldenseal is usefully combined with mandrake and an aromatic in equal proportions, and for this purpose cloves will be found well adapted as the aromatic; this combination offers an extremely useful remedy in the most obstinate cases of constipation; without producing a strong cathartic action, it produces in the liver and bowels a proper condition of activity with which to perform with regularity their functions, so that the evacuation of stool is produced without such purging as frequently follows the exhibition of aperients. As a tonic, goldenseal is of extreme value; it is capable of administration for this and all other purposes, except as already considered, in the forms of substance, decoction, or infusion; in all of these forms it seems to possess a special adaptation to those atonic conditions of the digestive apparatus accompanied with a torpid action of the liver and bowels. Combined with an aromatic, it provides an efficient exhibition in sickness and vomiting, and is especially applicable to the vomiting peculiar to pregnancy. For bilious and hepatic diseases, and all complaints resulting from an insufficient biliary secretion, and congested condition of the liver and bowels, it is capable of employment with certainty of the happiest results following upon its administration. It is usually speedy in the production of its first impressions upon the system; generally giving relief to the more urgent symptoms in a very short period after being taken into the system. Goldenseal is eligible for combination with any medicine, where any indications for its employment exist. Official preparations: Pulvis Carui Composita. Pulvis Hydrastidis Composita.

HYPERICUM:
JOHNSWORT. ST. JOHNSWORT.
HYPERICUM PERFORATUM. THE WHOLE HERB.

Johnswort is astringent, sedative, and diuretic. Recently it appears to have fallen very much into disuse. It has been employed with success in the treatment of hysteria, intermittent fever, dysentery, and urinary and lung complaints; also in jaundice, and against some kinds of worms. It possessed considerable reputation once as a vulnerary, being so employed internally, while applied to the wound in some form of outward application. An ointment prepared from this herb is in occasional use, and is reported to be a beneficial application to turn ours, hardness and swelling of the breasts, and for piles.

HYSSOPUS .

HYSSOP.
HYSSOPUS OFFICINALIS. THE HERB.

Hyssop is a warm, gently stimulating aromatic, carminative, diaphoretic, and tonic. It is given generally in the warm infusion, which may be administered in frequent and copious draughts. It is of extreme value in colds, coughs, and catarrhal complaints. In chronic catarrh, its diaphoretic, stimulant, and tonic properties combine to render it of especial value, and results of a most satisfactory nature constantly follow its employment in cases of this complaint. In colds, accompanied with coughs and pectoral difficulty, where any degree of fever is present, the somewhat old-fashioned combination of hyssop with horehound has scarcely even yet been superseded by a more serviceable remedy; the two agents are combined in equal proportions, and given, in the form of infusion, as freely and copiously as the patient can be prevailed upon to take it; the addition of honey to this infusion is, in many cases, found to augment its power, and, a consideration with patients possessing delicate stomachs, to some extent to cover the taste of the medicine. The weak infusion of hyssop is serviceable in fevers, measles, and other eruptive diseases of childhood, the only objection to its employment in these cases being its flavour, which, while many children not only tolerate, but appear to exhibit a fondness for, is to others nauseating, thus rendering it, in many cases, impracticable of administration; where this is found to be the case, hyssop may with propriety be combined with marigold, which is equally useful for the purpose, while not possessing the objectionable flavour; or the latter may be in any case substituted for hyssop.

ICTODES :
SKUNK CABBAGE.
ICTODES FOETIDUS. 'THE ROOT.

An antispasmodic expectorant, diaphoretic, and tonic. It is a good medicine in coughs, colds, influenza, and in pectoral affections generally, being also well adapted for pulmonary consumption, pleurisy, and asthma. It may be given in substance, infusion, or syrup, the pill form being generally preferred when the exhibition is to be made in substance. It is a thoroughly well-tried and reliable agent in chest affections of a chronic nature, having a special adaptation to those forms of these complaints to which persons in advanced life are peculiarly subject; this would appear to be the case chiefly from its combination of anti-spasmodic with expectorant properties, thus rendering it of extreme suitability in those cases in which flatulence and similar disorders of the digestive apparatus are present in complication with the primary symptoms, and which, to a considerable extent, are found to act as aggravating causes to the chest affections for which the medicine is primarily intended; it also corrects any indications. of inactivity of the bowels, when present, thus producing a beneficial influence upon the principal causes of aggravation, throughout the entire system, to the more urgent symptoms of the case for which it is exhibited. This combination of properties renders it of extreme value in many cases which have assumed a chronic and serious aspect. It has enjoyed considerable reputation in pulmonary consumption in its most advanced stages; and has been employed with remarkable results in bronchitis, pleurisy, and other chest affections, and especially in spasmodic asthma. The subjoined formula is one in which it has been exhibited with the happiest consequences: Take of skunk cabbage, boneset, cherry bark, each, half an ounce; lobelia, one drachm; infuse in one pint of boiling water for ten minutes, and strain. The dose is two fluid ounces three or four times a day, and is given to the best advantage while warm.

INULA:
ELECAMPANE.
INULA HELENIUM. THE ROOT.

Elecampane is carminative, tonic, diaphoretic, expectorant, and gently astringent. It is employed in coughs, colds, lung diseases, and generally in catarrhal affections. It is seldom given in its individual capacity, being most frequently preferred in combination with other medicines of a similar nature to itself; or, to answer any indications which may not be met by the principal ingredient of a given combination. It is best exhibited in decoction, except when, in certain cases, it may appear of advantage to exhibit the powdered root in honey. Its principal employment as a separate remedy is in acute catarrhal affections, in which it is of advantage to give it warm, and in small and frequently repeated doses. It is valuable as an ingredient in medicines for chronic lung diseases, asthma; and bronchitis ; it gives relief to respiratory difficulties, and assists expectoration. In those chest diseases with an attendant weakness and debility of the digestive organs, or the system generally, it is found extremely valuable; it affords some degree of nourishment to the lungs, and by this means strengthens the respiratory apparatus, and, as a consequence, its effects are almost immediately felt in other parts of the system. The decoction might, if desired, be made into a syrup, which would form a convenient method of exhibition where infants and young children are concerned, and would be useful in most infantile chest affections, with the results frequently attendant upon these affections: weakness, emaciation, &c.

It has also been found useful in some skin diseases, but as an alterative it does not seem to have met with any extended employment. In some individual cases as a gentle diaphoretic, it is thought to have produced results which have been erroneously ascribed to an alterative principle contained in the root. In piles, proceeding from exhaustion and debility of the system, it is given with certain benefit, and its action in this direction may be considerably increased by administering it in honey, the proportion employed being one part of the powdered root in two parts of honey; the dose of the substance is from three to five drachms, three times a day. Official preparations: Pulvis Inulae Composita. Pulvis Piperis Composita.

IPECACUANHA:
IPECAC.
CEPHAELIS IPECACUANHA. THE ROOT.

In small doses ipecac acts as a diaphoretic, expectorant, alterative, and stimulant; in medium doses it is a nauseant and in large doses emetic. It is given in small doses in coughs colds, and catarrhal affections, asthma, bronchitis, in haemorrhage from the lungs, uterus, and other organs, and in diarrhoea and dysentery; in still smaller doses it is valuable in the febrile and chest complaints of childhood, employed with advantage in croup, whooping cough, and measles. As an emetic it acts most efficiently, producing vomiting with the least possible amount of pain, uneasiness, and retching of the stomach and adjacent region; the usual dose as an emetic is from fifteen to twenty grains; its action is much facilitated by a free employment, before and during its operation, of a warm infusion of chamomile or pennyroyal. In doses of from one to three grains, it is given in asthma and bronchial affections, a class of complaints in which it is exhibited with the utmost benefit; it is equally well calculated, in the same doses, to meet all the indications supplied in catarrhal complaints. Perhaps the greatest value of this agent, however, lies in its efficiency in uterine haemorrhage; in very small and frequently repeated doses, it rarely fails in producing complete cessation of the haemorrhage very quickly, whether occurring in the unimpregnated state of the organ, or as the haemorrhage peculiar to the pregnant state; for this purpose it is considered of the utmost reliability and certainty. Similarly, ipecac is employed in bleeding from the lungs and other organs, and in diarrhoea and dysentery, in all these complaints it is given in small doses, repeated with such frequency as seems indicated by the circumstances of the case. In minute doses, ipecac is of value in infantile febrile complaints, and in croup, sore throat, whooping and the ordinary coughs of childhood; also in measles and diseases of similarly eruptive nature.

IRIS:
BLUE FLAG.
IRIS VERSICOLOR. THE RHIZOMA.

Blue flag possesses cathartic, emetic, diuretic, and alterative properties. It is employed in spasmodic pains in the stomach and bowels, in constipation, blood disorders, rheumatism, and in dropsy and urinary difficulties. It may be administered in substance or decoction. In large doses it produces vomiting and purging; in smaller doses it is laxative, and has a useful action upon the liver, bowels, and circulatory system. Its principal employment is in skin diseases, for the treatment of which it seems well fitted, exercising in these cases a powerful alterative influence, and in dropsy, in which complaint it is combined with other diuretics in preference to its separate exhibition.

JALAPA:
JALAP.
EXOGONIUM PURGA. THE ROOT.

An active hydragogue cathartic, of great power and efficacy in chronic constipation of the bowels, and in dropsy. It is exhibited in substance, of which a dose of from fifteen to thirty grains operates efficiently with strong cathartic effect, producing, especially in dropsy and urinary suppression, copious watery evacuations; its action is admirably distributed throughout the entire extent of the alimentary passage, thus rendering it suitable in all indications for a brisk purge. It is in all cases of its exhibition advisable that its action should be qualified by the presence of some aromatic substance as a corrigent, in order to prevent the griping and pain which, especially in obstinate cases, is apt to be felt during its action; it is good practice to combine rhubarb with this agent, as the two acting together, do so with less pain, and more efficiently, perhaps, than either medicine when exhibited in its separate capacity. Jalap has been employed against worms, but does not appear of itself to possess any power as an anthelmintic, although it is more than possible, that in its operation upon the bowels it may have been known to have caused their displacement in part, or even entirely. One great recommendation for its employment lies in its almost perfect tastelessness. Official preparation: Pulvis Filicis Composita.

JUNIPERUS:
JUNIPER.
JUNIPERUS COMMUNIS. THE BERRIES.

Juniper is carminative, stimulant, and diuretic., It is useful in dropsy and chronic dropsical complaints, gravel, heat and retention of urine, and urinary difficulties generally. In those forms of dropsy accompanied with wind, pain, and uneasiness, more especially after taking food into the system, the infusion will be found productive of the happiest results. For pains in the lumbarregion, rheumatic pains, whether connected or not with urinary difficulty, mucous discharges from the bladder, of recent or chronic origin, juniper is eminently fitted, It forms an excellent adjuvant to other diuretics and to medicines for rheumatism, sciatica, and lumbago; for uterine disorders, more especially. when arising out of some urinary difficulty, it is also valuable. For the purposes enumerated it is one of the safest and most reliable medicines in employment; its action being generally felt in a very short time after exhibition. Although the mode of administration usually adopted with this agent is that of infusion, the berries are frequently swallowed whole, being taken in precisely the same manner as pills; of course it will not be necessary to add that when this, mode is preferred, it is equally eligible with the infusion or any other method of preparation which can be adopted, In those cases, however, where the complaints have arrived at a chronic stage, it is necessary to combine with it other medicines of similar nature to itself, with a view to obtaining more satisfactory results. When this is desired the following forms an excellent medicine: Take of juniper, one ounce; poplar, marshmallow root, and buchu, each half an ounce; boil in three pints of water to two, and give in the usual dose. This will be found a medicine, of the utmost value in dropsy, gravel, and urinary difficulties generally, and may be given with benefit in the most advanced stages of these complaints. When coldness of the body or extremities is present a small quantity of cayenne may be added to the medicine with advantage.

KRAMERIA
RHATANY.
KRAMERIA TRIANDA. THE ROOT.

A powerful astringent, tonic, and corroborant. It is used in indigestion and similar complaints, and in weakness of the stomach and bowels; the chief indications for its employment being diarrhoea, haemorrhage, bloody and profuse menstruation, and other cases in which an astringent impression is called for. It may be given in decoction or infusion. Where employed with a view to its tonic action only, it may be exhibited in the ordinary dose three or four times during the day, as required; and in the slighter forms of diarrhoea a similar dose may also be given. In its more severe forms, however, it will be found of service to repeat this dose after each evacuation of the bowels. In cases of haemorrhage, from any organ, it is best given in a dose of one fluid ounce, frequently repeated-once in every fifteen minutes, if necessary-until complete cessation of the haemorrhage occurs. For severe haemorrhage the officinal infusion of rhatany and rose flowers should be preferred to its separate employment. Rhatany is also of value in leucorrhoea and other discharges from the system. Applied locally to spongy gums and loose teeth it arrests the cankered condition and strengthens the parts; it also forms a useful astringent gargle for sore and ulcerated throat. Officinal preparation: Infusum Krameriae et Rosae.

LAUREOLA:
SPURGE LAUREL. WILD LAUREL.
DAPHNE LAUREOLA. THE LEAVES.

Laurel possesses properties of a very similar nature to those of mezerion, elsewhere described, but requires a somewhat careful employment, owing to its strong tendencies to provoke vomiting and purging. It has been given employment in rheumatism and diseases of the skin; but, from its somewhat uncertain action in the direction indicated, other medicines, upon which greater dependence is to be placed, have been substituted for it.

LAVANDULA :
LAVENDER.
LAVANDULA VERA. THE UNEXPANDED FLOWER BUD.

An elegant aromatic stimulant, possessing also carminative and nervine properties. It is useful in hysteria, nervousness, head pain, and for similar disorders; but, at present, is little used as a medicinal agent, except occasionally as an adjuvant or flavouring agent to other medicines. It finds its chief consumption in perfumery.

LEONURUS :
MOTHERWORT.
LEONURUS CARDIACA. THE HERB.

Motherwort is diaphoretic, tonic, emmenagogue, nervine, and antispasmodic. It is given with thy best effects in hysterical affections, sleeplessness, delirium, and uterine pain and disorders. The usual method of administration takes the form of infusion, of which the usual dose is given; or, in cases where this does not act with sufficient quickness, it may be given in ad libitum doses. As a tonic it acts without producing febrile excitement, giving tone to the organs and changing the morbid conditions of the secretions. It is well adapted to those cases in which a combined tonic antinervine impression is desired, but where the least excitement would be regarded with serious apprehension. In fevers, attended with nervousness and delirium, it is extremely useful; it calms the nervousness, and induces a quiet and passivity of the whole nervous system, ending generally in a healthy sleep, from which. the patient awakes refreshed and invigorated. In those nervous disorders produced by, or accompanied with, continued wakefulness or irritability of the nervous system, it acts in the most satisfactory manner. It is also employed in spinal diseases, in uterine spasm and disorders, irregularities in the menstrual evacuation, and debility of the uterine system. For all these indications it would perhaps be difficult to indicate a remedy of greater suitability. Motherwort is useful also in heart disease, palpitation, neuralgia and other affections of the heart, in which it has acquired an extensive reputation.

LEPTANDRA:
BLACKROOT.
LEPTANDRA VIRGINICA. THE ROOT.

Blackroot is deobstruent, diaphoretic, tonic, and an efficient cathartic, operating mildly and with certainty. It is indicated in typhus and bilious fevers, in dropsical complaints and obstructions, and in dyspepsia, liver disorders, and jaundice. It is. given in infusion. In the fevers named it acts admirably, removing the black morbid secretions from the bowels, and rapidly removing the symptoms produced by the over-charge of the system with abnormal secretions, and reducing the febrile symptoms considerably. Its action upon the bowels, while thorough, is attended by no inconvenience or derangement of their functions, it leaving the system in a perfectly healthy condition without subsequent constipation. In dyspepsia it is of extreme value; and in liver complaints and torpid conditions of the bowels, and viscera generally, it is of the greatest service. A good method of. exhibition in congestion of the bowels and liver, and general torpor of the system, is to combine it with goldenseal, equal proportions of each agent being employed.

From this an infusion is prepared, the medium dose of which is two fluid ounces, to be repeated every four- hours, which may be increased or diminished in quantity and frequency, as is indicated by its action, or want of action, upon the bowels.

LINUM:
FLAX. FLAXSEED. LINSEED.
LINUM USSITASSITUM. THE SEED.

This is one of tile commonest and best known of medicines. It receives employment in both popular and the regular practice. It is emollient, demulcent, and, occasionally, laxative. As a demulcent drink the decoction or mucilage is probably equal to any other agent in employment. In urinary calculus, gravel, and bloody urine, it is productive of excellent results; and in some forms of suppression of the urinary secretion is of service. It has also been employed as an injection in constipation of the bowels. For this purpose it is employed in the form of mucilage as thick in consistence as can be injected with ease. For this purpose, however, it appears to have fallen into general disuse. It is, nevertheless, one of the most suitable agents for this method of employment which can be resorted to. It acts with certainty, is moderately quick in action, and produces neither pain nor undue purging, procuring simply a natural evacuation, and leaving the bowels in a healthy condition, thus offering no inducement to the appearance of piles or other undesirable symptoms. Linseed is, however, in most repute in coughs and catarrhal complaints, in which it receives a most extensive employment. The decoction is given with much benefit in all ordinary cases of cough, difficulty of respiration, and chest and pulmonary affections generally. Its action in these cases may be augmented by the addition to the decoction of lemon juice, liquorice, or Spanish juice; indeed, it may be administered in conjunction with any medicine designed to meet similar indications for which it is itself given. Linseed cake, the product of a process by which, by means of pressure, the oil is extracted from the seed, forms a highly nutritious food Jar cattle, for which purpose it has acquired a good reputation.

This cake also, by grinding, furnishes the linseed meal in common use for poulticing. Linseed oil, obtained in the manner already referred to, finds one of its chief means of consumption among painters, for mixing up paints; a great deal also is consumed in the manufacture of printers' inks, for which the quickness with which it dries renders it peculiarly applicable. It is also in use as an application to burns and scalds. For these purposes it is usual to add to it a proportion of lime water equal in quantity to that of the oil employed. Neither of these agents, nor the combination of the two, are, however, of so much value as a simple dressing of the affected part with water, warm or cold, as may be preferred, in the same manner as adopted in the case of the oil, or oil and lime water; the object, the total seclusion of the surface from external contact, being accomplished by the employment of water as effectually as is the case with the other agents, each of which possesses heating tendencies, and, therefore, would sooner encourage than prevent inflammation of the affected part. Crushed linseed is another preparation of this article; it consists of the seeds ground in the same way as the meal, as previously mentioned, but without being divested of their oil. It is called crushed linseed in order to distinguish it from the ground linseedcake. Crushed linseed is always to be preferred for poulticing to the linseed meal, as, containing the oil, it is both more thorough in its action and efficacious in its results. The poultice of linseed is used for gatherings, boils, abscesses, and swellings, to promote suppuration. For all these purposes, however, the poultice may be improved by the addition of slippery elm in the proportion of one part of elm to two of linseed. When it is desired to induce suppuration with increased speed, ginger is also added with benefit, thus forming the compound slippery elm poultice described in Part II. The only objection raised to the employment of linseed as a poultice is that, by drawing so heavily, it is frequently the cause of severe pain., This, to a considerable extent, is obviated by the combination with it of elm, which, while assisting the operation of the linseed, relieves the pain, and thus, to a great extent removes the objection to its employment. When elm is not obtainable, a serviceable substitute will be found in white bread, of which it will be necessary to use a proportion equal to that of linseed.

As a local application for pain, and to give relief in respiratory difficulties, the poultice of linseed is valued highly, and, again, the addition of ginger is a distinct aid in its operation; except, however, for the promotion of suppuration, the presence of elm, or its substitute-bread, is uncalled for. Mustard is more commonly used than ginger to impart warmth in the poultice; but the latter is certainly to be preferred, as it possesses no disposition to the production of vesication, and it may be used with perfect freedom, and for unlimited periods, without apprehension of this or other unfavourable symptoms; this is a decided advantage not possessed by mustard. When the object of the application is to give relief in difficulties of respiration and chest affections, in most cases it will be found advisable to employ two poultices, one being applied upon the chest, and the second between the shoulders. This external application forms a most useful adjunct to the internal treatment of whooping cough and other infantile chest complaints especially, and is capable of good service in all cases accompanied with difficulty in breathing, wheezing, and other affections of the pulmonary region. Official preparations: Cataplasma Lini; Cataplasma Ulmi Composita.

LINUM CATHARTICUM
MOUNTAIN FLAX. PURGING FLAX.
LINUM CATHARTICUM THE WHOLE HERB.

Mountain flax is tonic and cathartic. It is a valuable agent in constipation of the bowels, torpid state of the liver, and in certain forms of rheumatism; it has also been recommended in some catarrhal affections. It is administered in infusion. It obtains its principal employment in constipation, in which it is exhibited with success in cases of complete stoppage of the bowels of eight and nine days' duration, and even of longer periods; it operates actively, and usually without giving pain, producing catharsis generally in a very short time after its exhibition. It is advisable, generally, to combine with it a carminative, as, although usually operating without pain or uneasiness, it will occasionally, especially in obstinate cases, where the system, having become habituated to the action of purgatives, has experienced no relief from their exhibition, and the bowels have arrived at such a state of inactivity that the patient will frequently pass days together without expelling the feces, in these cases it will occasionally produce griping and pain when administered without some carminative. For this purpose peppermint is found extremely useful with this agent. In chronic cases of constipation, where effectual cure has been despaired of, resort has been had to the following formula, the happiest results following its employment: Take of mountain flax, poplar, and raspberry, each, half an ounce ;boil in one and a half pints of water for ten minutes; it is to be given in doses of two fluid ounces every three hours when twenty-four hours have elapsed without action of the bowels. When the medicine does not act so efficiently as desired, the proportion of the flax to the other ingredients is to be increased.

By the continued employment of this medicine, many cases of obstinate and apparently confirmed constipation have been perfectly cured; and it is to be remembered, in connection with this remedy, that when a regular action of the bowels has once been established, it is required in smaller doses, and with less frequency, until ultimately its employment is often rendered unnecessary, except in such occasional instances as frequently happen to the healthiest people. In liver complaints and jaundice, flax has been employed with benefit, the dose in which it is administered being regulated by its action upon the bowels; the same may also be said of this agent in treatment of muscular rheumatism. It is asserted useful in many cases of cough, especially in whooping cough; but its cathartic qualities will generally render it inadmissible to these cases.

LOBELIA:
LOBELIA.
LOBELIA INFLATA. THE WHOLE HERB.

In small doses, this is a stimulant, expectorant, and antispasmodic; in large doses, one of the most efficient and powerful of emetics. It is seldom employed in its individual capacity; and when so employed is usually in the form of syrup, tincture, or pill. It is one of the most valuable expectorants in employment, but, in consequence of its strong emetic disposition, it can be given only in small quantities, and is generally to be preferred in combination with other medicines of similar nature to itself. In spasmodic asthma, bronchitis, whooping cough, and other affections of the chest, throat, and respiratory apparatus, it is of immense value, and in extensive employment having achieved such a reputation in the treatment of these diseases as has been accorded to no other single remedy. It is also useful in wind and pain, but is always, in these cases, given in combination with other antispasmodics, and is employed in minute quantities only. As an emetic, it is usually exhibited in conjunction with the warm infusion of composition, or bayberry; this infusion being given in the dose of a fluid. ounce every ten minutes for an hour; into the last dose from five to fifteen grains of powdered lobelia is introduced; this is then followed, as before, with frequent doses of the warm infusion of either of the agents previously proposed. This produces emesis with the least possible win and inconvenience, but with the utmost efficiency. For the purpose of an emetic exhibition, the add tincture, as described in Part II., may be appropriately substituted for the crude article. Official preparations: Pilula Aloeset Rhei. Pilula Anthemidis Composita. Pilula Lobelire Composita. Pulvis Podophylli Composita. ,Pulvis Carui Composita.Tinctura Lobeliae Acidum.

LUPULUS:
HOPS.
HUMULUS LUPULUS. THE STROBILES.

Hop possesses tonic, nervine, and anodyne properties, and is employed. in dyspepsia, nervousness, sleeplessness, delirium tremens, in inflammation and fever. The infusion should be preferred, as by long boiling As properties become impaired; it is, however, occasionally employed in the form of extract. For ordinary administration, an infusion prepared from half an ounce of hops to each pint, will be of the proper strength when exhibited with a view to a strong anodyne impression, an ounce must be employed to each pint of infusion. The weaker infusion forms a most acceptable tonic, capable of employment in all the indications for this class of medicines. It is, however, for its value as an anodyne that the hop receives its principal employment in medicine ; while inducing natural sleep and a condition of perfect rest throughout the whole system, it leaves none of the effects so frequently occurring after exhibition of stronger anodynes; it is adapted for employment in all the indications for opium, where the object of its exhibition is an anodyne effect. In cases of nervousness, sleeplessness, delirium, and inflammation, a soothing effect follows its administration, which is quickly felt throughout the entire nervous system, inducing a state of repose, and giving relief to, and, in many cases entirely allaying, the pain which previously has been suffered, frequently procuring for the patient sleep after long periods of sleeplessness. For the latter purpose, a pillow of hops has been successfully employed, the hops being previo sly moistened to prevent their rustling; this pillow is to be preferred for use while warm. In overwrought conditions of the brain, brain diseases, and in the delirium of drunkards, the infusion is given with most satisfactory results; it is of great efficacy, also, in heart disease, fits, neuralgic and nervous disorders, in uterine spasm and pain, and for severe after-pains following upon accouchement; it is also useful in indigestion, jaundice, and stomach and liver affections generally. Hop is usefully combined with medicines where an anodyne impression is desired in combination with those produced by other agents; for this purpose it is well adapted, combining with the utmost facility with other medicines without suffering loss of its own peculiar properties by the combination; As an external application, the results attendant, upon its employment are not inferior to those following its employment as an internal remedy; it is used for gatherings, boils, swellings of a painful nature, rheumatic and neuralgic pains, and inflammation, both in the form of fomentation and poultice.

As an anodyne application, it is difficult to find anything more suitable for employment than hop; it removes the pain, and allays inflammation in so short a time, that for these purposes it forms an invaluable agent.

MARRUBIUM :
HOREHOUND.
MARRUBIUM VULGARE. THE WHOLE HERB.

Horehound is expectorant, diaphoretic, and tonic, and offers a most valuable remedy in all chest complaints, whether recent or chronic in their origin. In hoarseness, coughs, colds, asthma, and even in pulmonary consumption, it has been employed with the utmost success. It is usually exhibited in infusion, although by some the decoction is preferred. Horehound is indicated in all those cases where a combined tonic and expectorant impression is desired, and is used with the utmost safety in all cases, being equally applicable to those of infants as to those occurring in patients of middle and advanced life. For infantile coughs, croup, and other effects of cold it is given to advantage in the form of syrup; this offers a most useful medicine for children, not only for the complaints already mentioned, but as a tonic and corrective to the stomach. For chronic cough, asthma, and in consumption, it is given with benefit in combination with hyssop, rue, and marshmallow root, half an ounce of each being boiled in two pints of water to one and a half; when cool, it is strained, and given in a dose of two fluid ounces every two, three, or four hours, as is necessary, or it may be given on the approach of any sign of irritation or cough. For ordinary cold, the simple infusion of horehound is generally sufficient in itself to secure its removal, or, if located principally in the head, it is occasionally given with hyssop and yarrow, equal proportions of each being employed; this infusion may or may not be sweetened, as desired. As a tonic, horehound is suitable either for individual exhibition or for exhibition in combination with other tonics; it has also been employed in certain liver disorders, and as a tonic for the kidneys.

MELISSA:
BALM.
MELISSA OFFICINALIS. THE WHOLE HERB.

Balm is a stimulant diaphoretic, and carminative. It is used to expel wind, and for pain generally; the infusion is found useful as a drink in fevers and other complaints attended with thirst, its extremely agreeable flavour rendering it, most acceptable to the stomach in those cases where the patient shows disinclination for the beverages ordinarily presented to allay the thirst attending these complaints. It forms a useful medicine for colds, cold conditions of the system, debility of the stomach and digestive apparatus, and, generally, where a stimulant or carminative impression is desired. When taken into the system while warm, its effects are felt the more quickly, and its action appears to better advantage. The warm infusion is admirably adapted as a vehicle for the administration of emetics. Balm is also used to a certain extent as an adjuvant to griping and other medicines. A beverage known as "balm wine" is prepared by steeping four pounds of the fresh herb, or half that quantity if the dried herb is employed, in a gallon of water for five days; the liquor is then strained and pressed from the herb, and three pounds of sugar added; when the sugar has dissolved, it is placed in bottles and kept closely stoppered and in a cool place. This forms a palatable drink, and is given here for its proved usefulness in febrile disorders and the thirst so frequently resulting from disease. The herb is also employed as a substitute for tea.

MENTHA PIPERITA:
PEPPERMINT.
MENTHA PIPERITA. THE WHOLE HERB.

Peppermint possesses aromatic, sudorific, and antispasmodic properties. It is an efficient agent in spasms of wind, sickness, colic, diarrhoea, and other acute attacks of similar nature. It is generally exhibited in the warm infusion, which is to be prepared, and kept, while warm, in a covered vessel, so as to prevent the escape of steam. In sudden, attacks of wind, dizziness, fainting, head pain, and similar disturbance, it is given as freely as the patient can be prevailed upon to accept it; in these cases it frequently gives relief after failure with all other means previously employed. The addition of a small quantity of the compound tincture of caraway to the infusion is a means by which an augmented speed may be secured to its operation. Peppermint is of service in obstruction of the catamenia, accompanied with hysteria and nervous disorder; it would, indeed, appear to possess no inconsiderable power as a nervine; it has been employed with success in the more acute cases of nervous affections.

It also finds an extensive employment in measles, fevers, griping, convulsions, and similar infantile complaints, and is useful as an adjuvant to other medicines, either to cover their taste or to correct any griping or nauseating tendencies.

**MENTHA PULEGIUM:
PENNYROYAL.
MENTHA PULEGIUM. THE WHOLE HERB.**

This agent is useful as a carminative, stimulant, diaphoretic, emmenagogue, and diuretic; obtaining employment in wind, colic, spasms, colds, in the commencement of fevers, measles, and eruptive diseases, in suppressed and retarded menstruation, and suppression of urine. The best form of exhibition is that of a warm infusion, prepared in a covered vessel. In attacks of wind and spasms, this is scarcely inferior, as a remedy, to peppermint, and may in all cases be employed as a substitute when that article is not at hand. In colds, fevers, measles, smallpox, and eruptive diseases generally, more especially in those of infancy and childhood, it is of the greatest utility, and possesses the recommendation of being acceptable to the taste, so that no difficulty is experienced in its administration, even in comparatively large quantities, and in these complaints it should be given as a drink, rather than medicine, whenever any thirst is experienced by the patient; when the stomach is in an exceptionally foul condition, it is an advantage to combine with it an equal quantity of raspberry leaves. It is also occasionally employed for coughs in children, and although it exerts no direct influence as an expectorant, it is yet valuable as an adjuvant to cough medicines, in many cases producing a more speedy action of the medicines with which it is combined. For patients other than children, the addition of a little cayenne to the infusion is of service, as it largely increases the diaphoresis and the stimulant action generally. As an emmenagogue, it has enjoyed an extensive reputation, and is highly valued as one of the most efficacious remedies in suppression or obstruction of the menstrual discharge, and in painful and bloody menstruation; it offers, also, a uterine tonic of great value, and may be regarded as a most reliable medicine in all uterine difficulties indicating the employment of a stimulant and carminative. In obstruction of the perspiration it is also of value, and here, again, the addition of cayenne is of advantage in the promotion of its operation. As a diuretic, it is usually employed in combination with other medicinal agents, except in the cases of very young children, when, most frequently, it will be found of sufficient power in its individual capacity for ordinary obstructions of urinary secretion, as from colds or similarly slight causes Pennyroyal is suitable for employment in all obstructions, and may be given with the utmost safety in any quantity; it is to be preferred for exhibition while as warm as the patient can be prevailed upon to take it.

**MENTHA VIRIDIS:
SPEARMINT.
MENTHA VIRIDIS. THE WHOLE HERB.**

Spearmint possesses a very similar action to that of peppermint, answering all the indications for the latter medicine, but in somewhat lesser degree, and may, in all cases where the stronger of these two agents is not procurable, be substituted for it. Spearmint, however, in addition to the properties already enumerated under the head of peppermint, possesses that of a diuretic, thus being rendered eligible for exhibition in inflammation of the kidneys and bladder, generating wind and spasms in the adjoining regions, and in inflammation of the bowels involving sympathy of the urinary system. In those dropsical complaints in which the presence of wind in the system produces pain or any uneasiness, and consequent irritability of the urinary passages, spearmint is combined, with the happiest results, with other diuretics. Its individual employment as a diuretic is not to be depended upon to such an extent as to render it competent for employment in all cases; it is, therefore, generally employed in a combination. It is well fitted for combination with any diuretic, and is given with advantage even where no apparent uneasiness is created by the presence of wind, as in these cases it effectually prevents its formation in any quantity, which, in the absence of an impression similar to that produced by this agent; would inevitably result.

**MENYANTHES:
BUCKBEAN. BOGBEAN.
MENYANTHES TRIFOLIATA. THE LEAVES.**

Buckbean is tonic and diuretic, in small doses astringent, in large doses purgative. It is given in scurvy, scrofula, and in gouty and rheumatic affections, being of value, also in complaints of a dropsical nature. It may be employed in decoction or infusion. It finds its principal field of employment in rheumatism and obstructions of the circulatory system; cases, are on record of cures of rheumatic affections, by the employment of this agent previously given over as incurable; in sciatica, lumbago, and gout, it is equally useful.

It forms, also, a good tonic, and may be so administered as to suit any condition of the bowels; in the ordinary doses of two fluid ounces of the infusion or decoction, it will, in most cases, be found to act as a laxative, in larger doses as a purgative, and in smaller as a gentle astringent. Having regard to this variety of action upon the bowels in different doses, it is extensively employed as a tonic, both in its individual capacity and in combination with other agents. It is given with benefit in dropsy, and appears to possess a special fitness for those cases accompanied by extreme weakness and pain in the lumbar region.

MEZEREUM: .
MEZERION.
DAPHNE MEZEREUM THE BARK OF THE ROOT.

Stimulant, diaphoretic, and alterative. It finds its employment, generally, in combination with medicines of similar nature to itself, the action of which is materially enhanced by its presence, as, although of the utmost value as a medicinal agent, it is apt, in its separate employment, to produce purging and nausea to, an undesirable extent; in full doses it is capable of producing dangerous symptoms, and is asserted to have produced salivation; the latter effect, however, is never found to remain for any inconvenient period after the omission of mezerion from the medicine, and when the symptoms have passed off it may again be employed. It is exhibited in skin diseases, scurvy, scrofula, abscesses, and other states of the system arising out of a diseased and vitiated condition of the blood, and in all indications for a vigorous employment of alteratives. It is also of service in rheumatism and circulatory obstructions, for which it also has acquired considerable reputation. Official preparations: Decoctum Same Composita. Pulvis Sarzae Composita.

MYRICA:
BAYBERRY.
MYRICA CERIFERA. THE BARK OF THE ROOT.

Bayberry is stimulant and astringent; one of the most valuable agents in this class of medicines in employment. It is given in jaundice, diarrhoea, dysentery, in indigestion and debility of the stomach, and in all cankered conditions of the system. In chronic ulceration of the stomach, bowels, and other organs, it is one of the most reliable medicines to which employment can be given; it is also of extreme value in those forms of disease in which the mouth and tongue are coated with a thick, heavy mucus, and where discharges of mucus from the bowels are of frequent occurrence.

Its best form of employment is that of a decoction, containing one ounce of bark in each pint; of this, in chronic cases, two fluid ounces should be exhibited every two hours, unless a sense of nausea is produced; should this symptom occur, the dose is to be diminished in quantity rather than in frequency, except, as at times is the case, it seems desirable to evacuate the stomach by vomiting. In certain conditions of the system, it is found to develop a tendency to an emetic action; this is especially the case in cankered and morbid conditions of the system, and where any organ appears to have assumed a condition of atony, or debility of the system generally is manifested. Given on the first symptoms manifested of ulceration, it rarely fails to arrest its progress, imparting tone and astringency to the diseased organ, and quickly bringing under control all tendency to canker and ulceration. As an adjuvant to emetics in their exhibition also, this decoction is of extreme value; having ready the warm decoction, a dose of a fluid ounce is given at intervals of ten minutes, until nausea occurs, when the emetic is administered and followed by a dose of one-half the quantity exhibited previous to the administration of the emetic, but at shorter intervals-it is generally found that every two or three minutes constitute a sufficiently long interval during the period between the exhibition of the emetic and its acquiring a full action-this is continued until vomiting takes place; when required for this purpose, four cayenne pods may with advantage be added to each pint of the decoction. The advantage offered in bayberry over that of other vehicles for the administration of emetics, is that by its peculiar action upon the stomach, that organ is prepared for the action of the emetic before it is given, by cleansing its surfaces of the collections of morbid humours, and thus leaving so much less to be done by the emetic when taken into the system, which, as a consequence, acts with greater ease, occasioning in its operation less pain, and afterwards less nauseating effect, than otherwise is the case. When indicated in fevers, bayberry is to be given in a weak form, not more than half an ounce of the bark being employed to the pint of decoction. The strong decoction also forms an admirable gargle in sore and inflamed throat, quinsy, and those conditions of disease producing that thick, ropy lining of mucus upon the surfaces of the mouth, tongue, and throat; in the removal of this mucous covering, the gargle will be found of immense service, requiring only trial, where this has not yet been given, to lead to a more extensive employment in this direction.

Perhaps the best effects from its employment for this purpose, are seen in pulmonary consumption, where the throat sometimes, more especially after sleep, is completely clogged by the collection of this ropy mucus; in these conditions it is employed with the happiest results, even after failure with other means employed to effect this object, large quantities of thick, viscid pus, being frequently removed by its employment. This gargle may be used two or three times, or oftener, during the day, as required. For quinsy it is usual to combine bayberry with sage and rosemary as a gargle, the combination acting both more speedily and effectually in fulfillment of this indication than anyone of those ingredients when separately employed. A useful injection is also offered in this decoction for leucorrhoea and ulceration of the vagina and uterus. The powdered bark is useful as a dentifrice, both to cleanse and fasten the teeth, and for scurvy in the gums; it is also of service as a stimulant application to the surfaces of wounds, and to produce a healthy action in indolent ulcers and tumours, and sloughing wounds. Official preparations: Pulvis Carni Composita. Pulvis Composita. Pulvis Gentianae Composita. Pulvis Hydrastidis Composita. Pulvis Myricae Composita.

MYRISTICA:

NUTMEG.

MYRISTICA OFFICINALIS. THE KERNEL OF THE FRUIT.

MACIS : MACE.

MYRISTICA OFFICINALIS. THE ARILLUS OF THE FRUIT.

Nutmeg is a stimulant and carminative, of similar action to other medicines of this class. In large doses it is capable of producing symptoms of a dangerous nature, dizziness, languor, and stupor, followed by insensibility and other symptoms of narcotic poisoning. In smaller doses it is a valuable agent in flatulence and atonic conditions of the stomach.

As a flavouring agent it is much employed, and with propriety, in the preparation of many articles of diet; in this way it is useful in promoting digestion, and very largely in preventing the accumulation of wind in the stomach. It is useful in diarrhoea; in this complaint its effects are enhanced by roasting. after which process it is powdered and given in a dose of twenty grains, which may be increased or diminished in quantity or frequency, as indicated by the condition of the case. Nutmeg is also eligible as an adjuvant to medicines with which it is advisable to administer an agent of a carminative disposition, in consequence of tendency to griping or other unpleasant effects in. their unqualified employment. Mace possesses very similar properties to the fruit, and is suitable for employment in similar indications; it is, however, of somewhat weaker action, but upon many stomachs rests better, producing none of the objectionable effects felt from an overdose of the fruit.

MYRRHA :

MYRRH. GUM MYRRH.

**BALSAMODENDRON MYRRHA. A GUM RESINOUS EXUDATION
FROM THE STEM**

A stimulant, tonic, and emmenagogue, useful in debilitated conditions of the system, and in some affections of the chest and lungs, more especially where difficulty of expectoration is present. As an emmenagogue, it is of value in retarded and suppressed menstruation, and in the disorders arising from this cause. It forms an excellent dentifrice, useful in the removal of collections of canker from the teeth, and for spongy gums; as a gargle, also, for sore and relaxed throat, and as a wash for ulcerated mouth and fauces, it possesses the good opinion of all who have employed it and experienced the results following its employment. The dose is from ten to thirty grains, which is usually given in the form of pill, or the tincture may be used diluted with warm water. Official preparations: Linimentum Myrrhae Composita. Tinctura Myrrhae.

NYMPHOEA :

WHITE LILY. POND LILY.

NYMPHOEA ODORATA. THE ROOT.

Lily is astringent, demulcent, alterative, and expectorant. It is given in decoction, in which form it offers a valuable medicine in diarrhoea, dysentery, leucorrhoea, and in scurvy and scrofulous conditions of the blood. In excessive menstrual evacuation it is given with the utmost benefit, exerting a useful tonic action upon the uterine system, in addition to its action as an astringent upon the discharge; it is also similarly useful in diarrhoea and dysentery. As an expectorant, it has attracted considerable attention, but for this purpose it is, perhaps, less used now than formerly.

Its best action as a demulcent and expectorant is seen in consumptive and other coughs accompanied with extreme weakness and prostration and febrile derangement; in such cases, from the combination offered in this agent of tonic, astringent, and expectorant properties, much benefit is derived. It has been recommended in these cases for employment in the form of syrup; it also forms a useful diet drink. As a suppurative poultice, also, lily is of value; the powdered root is employed in its preparation, from which the poultice is made in the ordinary manner; this poultice is useful for indolent tumours, abscesses, ulcers, and other cases where it is necessary to resort to strong measures to promote the suppuration of wounds. It is used to advantage in combination with comfrey, equal parts of each agent being employed; the results following the employment of this poultice are of even more satisfactory nature than in the case of either agent when separately used. Official preparation: Pulvis Bistortae Composita.

OLEUM ANISI :
OIL OF ANISE.
THE OIL DISTILLED FROM ANISEEDS. See ANISUM.

It is well qualified to meet all indications as described under Anisum. The dose is from five to fifteen drops. Official preparations: Aqua Anisi. Spiritus Anisi.

OLEUM CARUI :
OIL OF CARRAWAY.
THE OIL DISTILLED FROM CARRAWAY. See CARUI.

Oil of carraway is employed principally as a corrigent to unpleasant medicines, to impart to them a more acceptable flavour, and to correct any griping which might otherwise be occasioned. The dose is from one to ten drops. Official preparation: Sympus Sennae.

OLEUM CARYOPHYLLI :
OIL OF CLOVES.
THE OIL DISTILLED FROM CLOVES. See CARYOPHYLLUM.

It is admirably adapted for all the indications of the crude article, and may in all cases be substituted for it. The dose is from one to six drops. It is advantageously introduced upon lint or tow into the cavity of decaying teeth in toothache. Official preparations: Pilula Anthemidis Composita. Pilula Cambogiae Composita.

OLEUM JUNIPERI :
OIL OF JUNIPER.
THE OIL DISTILLED FROM THE UNRIPE FRUIT OF JUNIPER.
See JUNIPERUS.

Stimulant and diuretic. It is useful in dropsical complaints, more especially when accompanied with the debility almost invariably present with dropsy. It is less used individually than with other medicines. The dose is from five to twenty drops, which may be increased as the patient becomes habituated to its action.

OLEUM LINI:
OIL OF LINSEED. LINSEED OIL. FLAXSEED OIL.
THE OIL EXPRESSED FROM LINSEED. See LINUM.

This oil finds its chief employment as an external application to burns and scalds; it is also of good service as a relaxant in sprains and stiffness of the joints arising from any cause. It has been given in doses of two ounces per day for constipation and piles, but its effects upon the stomach are such as frequently to render its repetition inadmissible.

OLEUM MENTHAE PIPERITAE :
OIL OF PEPPERMINT.
THE OIL DISTILLED FROM FRESH PEPPERMINT. See MENTHA PIPERITA.

Oil of peppermint is a valuable stimulant and carminative, and is one of the best adapted agents as a corrigent to medicines, the action of which is liable to give rise to griping and unpleasant symptoms.

It is also valuable as a means of effectually disguising the taste of the medicine exhibited; and forms, also, a convenient addition to medicines in those cases in which the primary symptoms for exhibition of the medicine are complicated with flatulence and debility of the digestive apparatus. In griping, colic, and spasms, it is frequently placed upon sugar, which absorbs the oil, which is then dissolved in water; by this means a warm cordial drink is produced, well adapted to these attacks. The dose is from one to three drops. When separately employed, the essence is to be preferred to the oil. Official preparations: Aqua Menthae Piperitae, Spiritus Menthae Piperitae.

OLEUM OLIVAE:
OLIVE OIL.
THE OIL OBTAINED FROM THE FRUIT OF OLEA EUROPA.

This oil possesses laxative and somewhat nutrient properties. It is well adapted as a substitute for castor oil as a purgative, acting in a similar manner, but, without the pain and uneasiness so frequently accompanying the action of the latter agent; it has been asserted less effectual, but although in single doses this may, in cases, be perfectly true, yet it will invariably be found, and in no cases so much as in those of habitual constipation, that after a few exhibitions it will act as efficiently, and its repetition be less frequently required, than is the case with castor oil. The dose is from one to two fluid ounces. As a laxative in external application, olive oil is of the utmost value, and for this reason receives extensive employment in liniments, forming frequently the basis of this class of applications; similarly its emollient properties have long marked it as a most efficient agent in the preparation of ointments; these two properties render it of considerable importance in pharmacy. It has been employed with asserted success in the prevention of pitting after small-pox, by smearing over the whole surface of the body each morning with this agent, until the postules have disappeared. Official preparation: Linimentum Camphone.

OLEUM ROSMARINI:
OIL OF ROSEMARY.
THE OIL DISTILLED FROM THE LEAVES OF ROSEMARY.
see ROSMARINUS.

Useful in some forms of headache, chiefly in those arising from nervous disturbance, and in fainting, vertigo, and similar disorders. The dose is from three to six drops. It also enters into the composition of some liniments, for which purposes its stimulant principle renders it frequently of eminent suitability. Official preparation: Spiritus Rosmarini.

ORIGANUM:
MARJORAM. SWEET MARJORAM.
ORIGANUM MARJORANA. THE LEAVES.

Marjoram possesses stimulant and carminative properties, and is also a mild tonic and diaphoretic. In the commencement of measles, it is useful in producing a gentle determination to the skin, and bringing out the eruption, and has enjoyed considerable employment in cases of obstruction of the perspiration, menstrual difficulties, and other obstructions. It is given in infusion, which is administered to the greatest advantage while warm; in ordinary cases of cold, and in the first stages of fever and menstrual derangement, the warm infusion, taken in frequent doses, will generally be sufficient to produce a more favourable condition in the patient. It is also useful in spasms, colic, and to give relief from pain in dyspeptic complaints. Where, in cases of obstruction, a stronger impression is called for than this agent is capable of supplying, it may yet be employed with benefit when the more active remedy cannot be at once procured. Marjoram has an extensive use for culinary purposes, for which it is well adapted, from a medicinal point of view.

PAPAVER:
POPPY. WHITE POPPY. POPPYHEADS.
PAPAVER SOMNIFERUM. THE RIPE CAPSULE.

Poppy is a useful anodyne, without possessing other properties in any marked degree. Its chief employment is as a fomentation, for which the decoction is used, for wounds, bruises, inflammations, erysipelas, and other painful affections requiring external treatment. After fomentation, it is in many cases useful to apply cloths saturated with the decoction to the seat of the pain or other affection, it removes pain, and lessens the amount of inflammation, and, where matter is not already formed, prevents its collection.

When a timely application of this is made, it will be found generally to prevent effectually the formation of gatherings, boils, and other suppurating affections; where, however, these are already formed, the fomentation will still be of service, if only to relieve the pain. It is also employed with benefit in neuralgic affections, gum-boils, and gatherings of the face from cold, in the same way. It is not suitable for internal administration, as in large doses it is capable of all the effects of a narcotic poison.

**PARIERA:
PARIERA BRAVA.
CISSAMPELOS PARIERA. THE ROOT.**

Tonic, diuretic, and aperient, pariera forms a good medicine in dropsical complaints, stone, gravel, and generally for affections of the bladder and kidneys, in rheumatism and jaundice, and has been asserted useful in leucorrhoea. It is given in decoction, which is administered in copious draughts, from one to two pints being taken during the twenty-four hours. It is of great value in urinary complaints and debility of the urinary system ; in dropsy it produces copious diuresis, removing very quickly the dropsical symptoms, and acting at the same time with great power as a tonic, imparting strength to the system. In chronic catarrh of the bladder, with the discharge of a thick, ropy nature, it is exhibited with marked success, carrying away the discharge and preventing its future secretion. It is also employed in inflammation of the bladder and kidneys, and in urinary calculus and gravel, in all these indications exercising a most salutary effect; it also exerts an efficient tonic action upon the mucous membranes throughout the genito-urinary system.

**PARIETARIA:
PELLITORY-OF-THE- WALL. WALL PELLITORY.
PARIETARIA OFFICINALIS. THE WHOLE HERB.**

Pellitory-of-the-wall-so called because found in the highest state of perfection when growing upon old walls, heaps of stone, and rubbish heaps containing a liberal quantity of old stone-is a most useful diuretic, possessing, in addition to its diuretic principle, that of a refrigerant, while also combining in itself somewhat demulcent and emollient properties.

It may be employed in infusion or decoction. It is given for stone in the bladder, gravel, stricture, and other urinary complaints. In the treatment of stone and gravel it is one of the most reliable and valuable of medicines. It is said that a quantity of the infusion of pellitory having been, through an oversight, allowed to remain for some time in a bottle, eat away the stone of which the bottle was composed, until, becoming so thin as to be unable to resist the force of the weight of the liquid contained in it, it broke, then worn away to the thinnest shell. Its action upon the urinary calculus is perhaps more marked than that of any other single agent at present in employment. It is extremely useful in all cases of pain in the bladder, or any part of the urinary system, owing to its possession in a considerable degree of demulcent properties.

**PETASITES :
BUTTERBURR.
TUSSILAGO PETASITES. THE ROOT.**

Butterburr is a stimulant, diaphoretic, diuretic, and vermifuge. It is used in pectoral affections, cold, cough, asthma, and fevers. It may be given in infusion or decoction; in either way it should be preferred for administration warm, and in frequent -and copious doses.

In the colds, croup, fever, measles, and similar complaints of infancy and childhood, it is given with extreme benefit; its action is the more marked in these cases when combined with other diaphoretics, as hyssop or pennyroyal, either of which is well adapted for combination with it. For coughs, difficulties of respiration and expectoration, and asthma, it is also employed successfully; the addition of honey to the decoction is a means by which in these cases its value is considerably enhanced. When relief is required in a short time a useful preparation will be found in the following: Take of butterburr, marshmallow, liquorice, horehound, each a quarter of an ounce; boil these in one pint of water for ten minutes; strain, and let it be taken freely while warm. By this combination the action of the butterburr is materially augmented, both in regard to the speed with which it produces relief and the permanent results of its exhibition. As a diuretic, little reliance is to be placed upon it, although considerable powers in this direction have been, at different times, attributed to it.

It may be questioned whether, apart from its stimulant properties, it possesses any disposition to a diuretic action. It certainly is not to be relied upon, however, for any appreciable results in urinary difficulties. It has been employed also with asserted success against the stomach and tape worms.

PETROSELINUM :
PARSLEY.
PETROSELINUM SATIVUM. THE ROOT AND SEED.

Both root and seed of this plant possess aperient and diuretic properties. The root is given in decoction; the seeds in infusion; the latter should be prepared in a covered vessel. The seed possesses a more carminative action, and where indications for this action exist is always to be preferred; but, except where this impression is desired, either root or seed, or both, may be employed indiscriminately. When an aperient with a diuretic action is desired, parsley is well adapted, and receives an extensive employment, always producing the happiest results. It is, however, chiefly exhibited in combination with other diuretics. The herb is said to contain alterative properties, but is seldom or never used except as a seasoning agent in the hands of the cook. It is very suitable for use as an article of diet.

PHYTOLACCA :
POKE.
PHYTOLACCA DECANDRIA. THE ROOT.

Poke is emetic and purgative, and, in large doses, narcotic. It is employed in substance or in decoction; the quantity required for a dose as an emetic being from fifteen to thirty grains. It operates very slowly, frequently requiring from three to four hours after its exhibition to produce its full action, which is then continued for a considerable time. Its operation is accompanied with little or no pain, but, when developed, it thoroughly evacuates both the stomach and bowels, a brisk catharsis accompanying the vomiting, but to no alarming extent. In large doses poke produces vertigo, dizziness and coma; it is, therefore, usual in its employment to combine it with other medicines of less powerful effects in this direction, in order to obviate these consequences. In the forms of poultice and plaster, poke is useful as a local application to tumours, ulcers, and gangrenous sores, upon which it exerts an efficient stimulant action. As a poultice it may be used with an equal proportion of slippery elm; but the elm is not recommended for use in combination with it for long without intermission. The best results are found to be secured from the employment of a poultice containing the two ingredients for two or three days, after which, for a little longer period, the poultice of poke only is used, when recourse is again had, for a similar time, to the combination. The decoction also is useful as an injection into the sinus of fistula; and, combined with blood root, forvaginum, in cancer and ulceration of the uterus.

PIMENTA :
PIMENTO. JAMAICA PEPPER.
EUGENIA PIMENT A. THE UNRIPE BERRIES.

A warm aromatic stimulant, similar in its action to cloves and other aromatics. It is chiefly employed as a medicinal agent, as an adjuvant to more unpleasant medicines, and those capable of producing symptoms of griping and of nauseating tendencies which it is desirable to avoid. It is of service in flatulence, colic, spasms, and similar affections arising from debility and cold conditions of the stomach and digestive organs. It is less used in medicine than as a condiment for food, for which it is well suited.

PINUS:
HEMLOCK.
PINUS CANADENSIS. THE BARK.

This agent is not to be confounded with the hemlock growing in this country as a herb; see Conium. Pinus is astringent, tonic, and diuretic; it was one of the principal medicines of the old Thomsonian practice, and one upon which great reliance was placed. It is one of the best diuretic tonics we possess. It is of value in liver complaints complicated with urinary difficulty, but it is in the treatment of urinary complaints, dropsy, gravel, pain and inflammation of the urinary passages, that its results are most apparent; in incontinence of urine and painful and difficult micturition it is given with the greatest benefit, and where, in any cases, an astringent and tonic impression upon the urinary system is indicated, it may be relied upon to answer these indications fully and satisfactorily. It is a most strengthening agent, promoting a healthy condition of all the organs with which in its passage through the system it comes in contact, or upon which it can exercise any influence whatever.

It is most useful for the purpose of forming a combination with other diuretics.

PIPER:
PEPPER. BLACK PEPPER.
PIPER NIGRUM. THE UNRIPE BERRIES.

A warm carminative stimulant, producing, when taken into the system, general arterial excitement, but acting with greater proportional energy upon the surfaces with which it is brought more immediately into contact. It is useful in debility of the stomach, and throughout the entire extent of the digestive system exerts a pure stimulant action, and is useful also in fevers where the indications for a stimulant impression exist. may be given in substance or in infusion, the former being the mode of exhibition generally in favour. It is of great value in fevers, more especially as an adjuvant to more active febrifugent agents, the action of which is materially increased by its presence. In those cases of debility of the stomach and digestive apparatus, as in the case of drunkards, where the ordinary means fail to produce the desired impression, it is exhibited with success. It is also of certain action where a speedy diaphoresis is required, producing a copious amount of perspiration in very short time; of course, for this purpose, it will be preferred in the warm infusion for administration. It is useful in piles and for constipation of the bowels; for either of these purposes it is most frequently given in the form of an electuary. Official preparation: Pulvis Piperis Composita.

PIX:
PITCH. BURGUNDY PITCH.
PIX BURGUNDICA. THE PREPARED CONCRETE JUICE OF ABIES
EXCELSA.

Pitch is employed as a rubefacient plaster, and in the preparation of plasters generally, forming an admirable base for this class of applications; this has led to its employment for this purpose extensively. Its principal employment as a separate agent is as a plaster for rheumatism and affections of a similar nature, where a somewhat protracted rubefacient action is necessary. Official preparation: Emplastrum Picis.

PODOPHYLLUM:
MANDRAKE. MAY-APPLE.
PODOPHYLLUM PELTATUM. THE RHIZOMA.

Mandrake is a hydragogue cathartic, alterative, anthelmintic, and antibilious. Its action extending over such a range of diseases, it is a medicine in most extensive employment. It is given in chronic bilious disorders, dyspeptic and scrofulous complaints, and in dropsy and rheumatism; but its greatest power as a curative agent lies in its action upon the liver and bowels. In biliousness and liver complaints, and especially in congestion of those organs, it offers one of the most reliable and valuable remedies to which employment can be given; it is a powerful and active cathartic, operating with quickness and certainty, and of superior action to jalap; in large doses it produces nausea and vomiting, and forms, indeed, a useful emetic; in smaller doses it acts admirably upon all the secretions, removing obstructions, and producing a healthy condition of all the organs in the system; in still smaller doses, it is a valuable remedy in skin diseases. It may be given in infusion, decoction, tincture, or substance, but is not to be given warm, nor in a warm vehicle. It acts upon the bowels in a manner so complete and thorough, in cases of constipation producing large alvine evacuations, as to effectually remove any obstruction which may be met with in its passage through the system, and to bring about a regularity in the action of the bowels, correcting any tendency to constipation, and never, except by employment to an undue extent, causing) looseness of the bowels or haemorrhoids. The unqualified employment of mandrake is apt to give rise to griping and considerable pain; this is especially so in obstinate cases; it is usual, therefore, in its exhibition, to combine with it an aromatic, in order to qualify any tendencies to discomfort which otherwise might be occasioned by its operation. A convenient form of exhibition is: mandrake, one drachm, cloves, half a drachm, each in powder. This quantity is given at one dose, for an adult. It may be administered in syrup or treacle; the latter forming, perhaps, the more preferable vehicle when a speedy impression is desired. Should the desired action not take place within four hours of its exhibition, one-half of the quantity is, on the expiration of this period, to be administered, and the latter dose is to be repeated every hour, until the bowels evacuate. Only in the most obstinate cases will its repetition be necessary, its action being generally prompt and effective; the most obstinate cases are found always to yield to this treatment, and it is in regular employment in chronic constipation; when every other remedy seems to have lost its effect upon the bowels, a resort to mandrake is always attended with satisfactory results.

Upon the liver it acts with great power, its operation upon this organ being stated by some writers of authority as being fully equal to that of calomel, while salivation is absolutely unknown to attend its employment; it is, therefore, rapidly coming into favour as a substitute for that drug, all the indications for which are fully answered in the agent now under consideration. In congested states of the liver it is employed with the greatest benefit, and for all hepatic complaints it is eminently suitable, and the results attendant upon its employment can scarcely be exaggerated. In those cases of weak bowels, with tendency to diarrhoea, which are occasionally met with, it will, of course, be seen that mandrake is unsuitable for exhibition; excepting, however, in these comparatively exceptional cases, it will always be found adapted to liver disorders, whether recent or chronic in their origin. In doses so small as to be capable of administration every three hours, it is an admirable alterative, well fitted for chronic diseases of the blood and eczematous affections; in scurvy, also, of long standing, it is given to great advantage, and in rheumatism, gout, dropsy, and dropsical tendencies of the system, or of disease, it forms a valuable addition to the medicines designed to meet these indications, the action of the medicine being increased by its presence. The only drawback, if, indeed, it may so be called, to the employment of mandrake, is that presented in its strong cathartic tendency, which, in many cases in which otherwise it would be a most desirable agent, disqualify it for employment. Official preparations: Pilula Cambogiae Composita. Pilula Podophylli Composita. Pulvis Taraxaci Composita.

POLYPODIUM :
POLYPODY. POLYPODY-OF-THE-OAK. FEMALE FERN.
POLYPODIUM VULGARE. THE ROOT.

Polypody is pectoral, purgative, and anthelmintic. It is useful in coughs and catarrhal affections, and in difficulties of expectoration, in those dry coughs characterised by hardness of the expectorated mucus, necessitating, as a consequence, severe exertion in coughing to expel it from its place of lodgment; in these cases it is of great value, as, besides promoting a free expectoration, it would appear to create a tonic impression upon the lungs. It receives occasional employment in certain hepatic complaints, and is a gentle and safe purgative. Against some kinds of worms it has also been used with asserted success. It may be administered in infusion, decoction, or substance, the latter form being preferred when employed as an anthelmintic.

POPULUS:
POPLAR. WHITE POPLAR.
POPULUS TREMULOIDES. THE INNER BARK.

A fine tonic; useful in all weak and debilitated conditions of the system, or of any separate organ. It is exhibited in decoction. To the urinary system, especially, it would appear eminently adapted as a tonic. In incontinence of urine, difficulty in voiding the urine, stricture, catarrh of the bladder, and mucous discharges from that organ, it receives an extensive employment. It is also highly esteemed as a remedy in debility of the female generative system, leucorrhoea, painful menstruation, and other disorders arising from this cause. In dyspepsia, and similar complaints, it also meets with employment. Official preparations: Pulvis Hydrastidis Composita; Pulvis Populi Composita.

POTERIUM :
BURNET.
POTERIUM SANGUISORBA. THE ROOT.

Both herb and root of this plant are useful astringents. The root, however, possessing the greater amount of the medicinal principle, and being, therefore, capable of producing more efficient results, has caused the herb to have fallen very generally into disuse for medicinal purposes; its employment being chiefly confined to that of an ingredient in the popular "herb beers." It is, nevertheless, useful as a substitute for the root, where the article is not procurable, as a mild stomachic, corroborant, and slight astringent. As an astringent, burnet root is employed with advantage in all abnormal discharges, especially when accompanied with loss of blood. In diarrhoea, dysentery, leucorrhoea, and bloody menstruation, it is of the utmost service; and in haemorrhoids, accompanied with bleeding, seminal weakness, and the exhaustion consequent upon long-continued discharges, as from abscesses and other wounds, or diarrhoea, and similar discharges. It is useful also as a tonic, and may be suitably combined with any medicines designed to produce an united astringent and tonic impression. It is given in decoction.

PRUNUS :
CHERRY. WILD CHERRY.
PRUNUS VIRGINIANA. THE INNER BARK.

A valuable expectorant, tonic, astringent and antiseptic. With excellent tonic power, cherry bark combines the ability of producing a diminution of the nervous and arterial irritation and excitability frequently found in disease. It is exhibited to the best advantage in the cold infusion.

In the nervous excitement, and similar distressing. symptoms, attendant upon pulmonary consumption, coughs, and in diseases of the chest and lungs generally, and in heart disease also, it is of exceptional service, and enjoys an extensive reputation. It is also one of the most suitable remedies in employment for dyspepsia and atonic conditions of the organs involved in the process of digestion. In large and repeated doses it exerts an exceedingly strong action upon the heart, producing a largely diminished action, while, at the same time, it materially strengthens the action of that organ; by this action it is rendered specially applicable in certain phases of consumption.

PULMONARIA :
LUNGWORT. OAK LUNGS.
PULMONARIA OFFICINALIS. THE ENTIRE LICHEN.

Lung-wort is pectoral and demulcent; a useful remedy, frequently, in catarrhal affections, spitting of blood, and chronic chest complaints. It is given in decoction, usually. It is not always to be depended upon for quickness of action, requiring at times a prolonged employment to obtain any satisfactory result. It is for this reason seldom used in medicine, except as a demulcent drink in disease and convalescence.

PYRETHRUM:
PELLTORY. PELLITORY OF SPAIN.
ANACYCLUS PYRETHRUM. THE ROOT.

Rubefacient and sialagogue, it is employed in inflamed conditions of the mouth and fauces, for which it is frequently chewed in the mouth, producing in the action of chewing a copious flow of saliva, and quickly reducing the inflammation. The decoction forms at once a medicine, gargle, and external application for quinsy, relaxed, and sore, throat, to the relief of which it is Successfully applied. It is given in toothache, neuralgia, and in some forms of headache, more particularly in those arising from nervous disorders. It is not to be employed when, any irritation of the stomach exists, and in no case should it be exhibited in large doses.

PYRETHRUM PARTHENIUM:
FEVERFEW. FEATHERFEW.
PYRETHRUM PARTHENIUM. THE WHOLE HERB.

Feverfew is aperient, carminative, anthelmintic, tonic, stimulant, and emmenagogue. The best form of exhibition is that of the cold infusion. It is employed in hysterical complaints, nervousness, and lowness of spirits, and is also recommended as possessing greater tonic power than is generally ascribed to it. As a stimulant, it is useful in obstruction of the urine and irregular menstruation; in menstrual disorders it is of especial value, acting at the same time as a tonic upon the whole uterine system and, as an emmenagogue. in suppressed and painful menstruation, where the pain is not confined to the uterine region alone, but extends to the adjacent parts. producing vomiting, dizziness, and other symptoms of nervous derangement, it is exhibited with much benefit, being suitable alike for separate employment and for combination with other medicines. As an anthelmintic, it is successfully employed against the roundworm.

QUASSIA:
QUASSIA CHIPS.
PICRAENA EXCELSA. THE WOOD.

A pure tonic without any stimulant property whatever it is of good service in those cases where a tonic impression is desired, but, owing to certain conditions of the system, any agent containing a stimulant principle is inadmissible. It is successfully employed in those weak and debilitated conditions of the digestive organs, and the dyspepsia frequently occurring as an accompaniment, or consequence, of acute disease. In fevers also, it is usefully employed as a tonic when it is undesirable to produce a stimulant impression. It is generally administered in infusion or decoction, the cold infusion being preferred by many; by some it is chewed, but few are met with able to take it in this manner, owing to its excessive bitterness. The infusion. is said to be useful as a preservative to vegetable substances.

Quassia is also frequently used as a substitute for hops in brewing.

QUERCUS:
OAK BARK. WHITE OAK BARK.
QUERCUS ALBA. THE BARK.

Oak bark is astringent and somewhat tonic ; it is well adapted for employment in all cases indicating an astringent exhibition, and is equally serviceable in those cases in which a mild impression only is desired, as in those in which the strongest astringent action is called for. The decoction forms a remedy of great efficacy in leucorrhoea, diarrhoea, dysentery, spitting and vomiting of blood, and in weakness and prolapsus of the bowels and uterus; in these cases it is given in small and frequently repeated doses; in diarrhoea and dysentery, after each. evacuation, and in other cases, every half-hour, if necessary. It may be given with perfect freedom to infants as well as to adults. In chronic weakness of the bowels, accompanied with diarrhoea, the decoction, prepared of the strength of two ounces of the bark in each pint, is exhibited in the dose of two fluid ounces every four hours. Upon the urinary system it exerts considerable action as a tonic, in addition to that of an astringent. In a similar dose to that already mentioned, it is valuable as a remedy for chronic weakness of the bowels and incontinence of urine; in some cases which have assumed a more chronic complexion, it will be necessary to continue its employment for some length of time, perhaps; but, except where arrived at such a stage as to be absolutely incurable, it may be relied upon with confidence to produce results of a satisfactory nature. It is also employed as an injection in leucorrhoea and diarrhoea, and forms a useful astringent wash for scorbutic and suppurating sores. A very strong decoction receives employment as a detergent fomentation to old wounds, ulcers, and similar sores requiring a thoroughly cleansing application. The powdered bark is also applied to the surfaces of wounds for a similar purpose, and has also received some employment as a poultice for the prevention of gangrene; for the latter purpose it is said to be of exceptional value, as, unless gangrene has already made considerable progress, it arrests its progress, and prevents its communication to the adjacent parts. It does not appear, however, to have received that amount of attention in this respect which it would seem to warrant.

RESINA :
RESIN.
RESINA. THE RESIDUE AFTER DISTILLATION OF OILS FROM CERTAIN
TURPENTINES.

Resin finds its employment entirely in pharmacy, to which it furnishes an important agent, being extensively used in the preparation of ointments and plasters, in the latter class of preparations not unfrequently supplying the principal ingredient. It has been asserted useful in preserving ointments and other fatty substances from rancidity. Official preparations: Emplastrum Picis; Emplastrum Resinae.

RHEUM:
RHUBARB. TURKEY RHUBARB.
AN UNDETERMINED SPECIES OF RHEUM. THE ROOT
DEPRIVED OF ITS BARK.

An astringent and cathartic; a most valuable union; rendering it adapted for exhibition under almost all circumstances. In large doses it produces a brisk, healthy purge, without clogging the bowels and producing the constipation too consequent upon the employment of some of the more active purgatives; neither does it leave the bowels in a state of weakness, by which a tendency to diarrhoea is induced. In small doses it exhibits stomachic and tonic properties, assisting digestion, and creating a healthy action of the digestive apparatus when in a condition of torpor and debility. In consequence of these properties it has received a somewhat extended employment in dyspepsia, the results of which employment have in all cases been to attest its value in the treatment of this complaint. It is exhibited in the several forms of infusion, tincture, syrup, extract, and substance-for latter mode of exhibition the pill form being preferred-and may, therefore, be given in the form most suitable to the different cases or conditions indicating its exhibition. For diarrhoea the roasted powder is in all cases to be preferred, as in the operation of roasting it is found that the cathartic properties of the root are very largely, if not entirely, given off; thus rendering a more frequent repetition of the dose practicable than is the case with the unroasted agent. When prescribed for delicate stomachs, the most elegant and acceptable form of exhibition will be provided in the infusion; but, whatever form the exhibition takes, an aromatic should in all cases be present with it, in order to counteract the tendency to pain and griping frequently produced by the operation of the drug when given unqualified by some corrigent.

Officinal preparations: Extractum Rhei; Infusum Sennae Composita; Pilula Anthemidis Composita; Pilula Sarzae Composita; Pulvis Carui Composita; Pulvis Myricae Composita.

RHEUM RHAPONTICUM:
ENGLISH RHUBARB. EUROPEAN RHUBARB.
RHEUM RHAPONTICUM. THE ROOT DEPRIVED OF ITS BARK.

English rhubarb is alterative, stomachic, tonic, and laxative. In most respects its properties are similar to those of the rhubarb described in the previous article, but is of much milder action as a cathartic, and possesses, in addition to its properties in common with the official rhubarb, that of an alterative. It may be given in substance or in decoction; in either form it offers, as already stated, a most valuable alterative remedy, well adapted –for employment in diseases of the blood, skin eruptions, spring and other rashes, and for use generally in all cases where an alterative is called for. As a stomachic, it may be employed in the same doses as the official rhubarb, –and, being considerably lower in price, may be advantageously substituted for that article –as satisfactory results being obtained from it in this direction as from the employment of the Turkey rhubarb. In its action upon the alvine secretion, the root at present under consideration is more feeble than that of the one previously described, necessitating its employment in somewhat larger doses when required to produce this action. In confirmed constipation, however, English rhubarb is to be preferred, as by its continued employment the bowels are brought to act naturally, and its action at no period of its employment –even where it is necessarily protracted for an unusual period gives rise to any tendency to pain, or induces a too copious evacuation of the bowels. But it is in its capacity as an alterative that it finds its principal employment, and the results following its exhibition for this indication can scarcely be overstated in scurvy and running sores and skin diseases generally. It is less used individually than in combination with other alteratives, with which its action is seen to the best advantage. Although the root is the only part of this plant employed in medicine, the stalks very largely possess the alterative properties of the root, and are, with good reason, highly esteemed as among the best and most purifying of our articles of diet. Its too free use is apt, especially in the case of persons with weak bowels, to exert considerable influence as a laxative; when taken only to such an extent as not to induce a too free action upon the bowels, it forms as useful an article of food as any other in consumption; it cleanses the blood and system generally from morbid secretions and impurities, and it is always the case, all other things being equal, that those who make the most free use of this as an article of diet, are most free from impurities of the blood, with their accompanying eruptions, boils, rashes, &c.

RHUS GLABRUM:
SUMACH.
RHUS GLABRUM. THE BERRIES AND INNER BARK OF THE ROOT.

The berries are astringent and refrigerant, the infusion offering a convenient and useful beverage in diseases attended with feverishness and thirst; it also forms a useful gargle in sore and inflamed throat, and relaxed and ulcerated tonsils. The bark is alterative and astringent, and is useful in disorders of the blood, and in prolapsus of the bowels and uterus. It is also used with benefit as a poultice to old sores and tumours of a malignant nature.

ROSA:
ROSE FLOWERS. RED ROSE.
ROSA GALLICA. THE PETALS.

An agreeable tonic and astringent, less used in medicine than in perfumery. As a medicine, it is useful in passive haemorrhage, mucous discharge, and in the slighter forms of diarrhoea. For haemorrhage, it forms, in combination with rhatany, one of the most effective remedies in employment. It is given in infusion, which is best prepared in a covered vessel. The simple infusion of roses is also useful as a vehicle for other medicines. Officinal preparations: Confectio Rosae; Infusum Krameriae et Rosae.

ROSMARINUS:
ROSEMARY. :
ROSMARINUS OFFICINALIS. THE LEAVES.

A gentle stimulant, nervine, and carminative, to which has been attributed some amount of emmenagogue properties. It is useful in all nervous affections, in dizziness, fainting, and heart disease; also in asthma and some other chest complaints. The infusion should be employed, care being taken to prevent the escape of steam during its preparation.

In nervous affections it is given with the utmost benefit; headache, fainting, hysteria, and vertigo, are all brought speedily under its influence, and a more favourable condition in the symptoms induced; in these affections, relief from the pain has been produced in some cases by the employment of the infusion as a local application to the seat of the affection. It is with propriety combined with other medicines for coughs, asthma, and chest complaints, as it is found to possess a special adaptation for those affections of a spasmodic character, and involving difficulty of respiration. To secure relief for these symptoms it is frequently smoked through the ordinary tobacco pipe, with satisfactory results, much relief to the respiratory apparatus being obtained from this method of employment. A very good preparation for smoking in affections of the chest and lungs, accompanied with difficulty in respiration and expectoration, is composed of rosemary and coltsfoot leaves in equal quantities, the two ingredients being rubbed together through a coarse sieve, and afterwards mixed. As an emmenagogue, it is seldom employed, although it would appear suitable for combination with this class of medicines where nervous disturbance is present as a consequence of menstrual or uterine disorder. Rosemary is also used in swellings and other local affections of a painful nature, as a fomentation, and, although less suitable for this purpose than many other agents, it is yet capable of producing results of a gratifying nature, and may be resorted to with benefit when it happens to be the most convenient article at hand in an emergency. Rosemary is extensively employed in preparations for the promotion of the growth of hair, entering very largely into the composition of "hair washes," "hair restorers," &c., and is well suited for employment for this purpose, and is perfectly harmless, and where the hair roots remain, will certainly produce a satisfactory growth of hair; besides which it forms an effectual remedy for, and preventive of, scurf and dandruff in the hair, and, as already mentioned, forms an excellent local application for headache and other similar complaints. A formula is subjoined which will be found useful as a wash to strengthen and preserve the hair: Take of rosemary and southernwood, each, half an ounce; camphor, two drachms; boiling water, one pint; infuse for ten minutes in a covered vessel, and strain when cool.

RUBUS:
RASPBERRY. RED RASPBERRY LEAVES.
RUBUS IDOEUS. THE LEAVES.

An excellent astringent tonic, combining with itself, to some extent, the properties of an alterative. It is employed in ulcerated conditions of the system, in thrush in infants, sore throat and mouth, arising out of disorder of the stomach or bowels, in diarrhoea, dysentery, leucorrhoea, and in certain haemorrhages, and as a local application for ulceration, leucorrhoea, and other purposes, in the forms of gargle, wash, and injection. The mode of preparation generally adopted is the one of infusion, which should be exhibited generally in frequent doses. In its action throughout the entire system, it cleanses it of morbid matters, removing all tendency to ulceration, and acting upon the secretions as a gentle stimulant; as, an astringent it is of peculiar value for its adaptation for meeting all the indications for medicines of its class, without producing the slightest ill effect, or by any condition of the system or of disease being contra-indicated. In the aphthous sore mouth of infants and infantile cold, with its attendant disorders, during teething, and in diarrhoea, fevers in all their stages, measles, small-pox, and all indications for an agent to give tone and so produce a healthier condition of the organs, or performance of their functions, it receives an extensive employment; it appears, indeed, to offer one of the most useful remedies for the complaints of childhood and infancy to which employment can be given. When a more diaphoretic action is required, as in colds, catarrhal and other affections, it is suitably combined with pennyroyal, an equal proportion of each article being employed. In constipation, and also in relaxed conditions of the bowels, it is equally serviceable; by bringing about the necessary balance in all the functions of the body, it produces a result relaxant or astringent in its nature, as is required to replace the system in its normal condition; as an astringent, it acts upon the secretions only in the case of abnormal discharge, as in diarrhoea or similar disorder. Raspberry is eligible for combination with aperients in all cases; it assists in their operation by removing and collecting from the membranes and mucous surfaces the morbid matter collected upon them, and so leaves the system in a condition more approaching the normal one than is usually the case after the exhibition of aperients and cathartics. A medicine which, as a cathartic, has achieved a singular amount of success, is composed as follows: Take of raspberry leaves, poplar bark, and mountain flax, each, half an ounce; boil in one pint of water for five minutes; it may be given in two fluid ounce doses every half-hour until it operates; this forms an admirable remedy for constipation in its most chronic forms. For children, a medicine, at once effectual and safe, and incapable of producing pain or other undesirable effect in its operation, is composed of raspberry leaves, half an ounce, English rhubarb, quarter of an ounce; this is infused for fifteen minutes, strained, and given in doses as required; generally from one to two fluid ounces, which may be distributed over as long or short a period as is deemed advisable, will be found sufficient to produce a healthy evacuation in stool in ordinary cases of costiveness as met with in children. Children, when used to this as an aperient, when such an exhibition is required, are seldom, almost never, known to require stronger medicines for this purpose.

As an astringent, it is as useful as in constipation; diarrhoea, dysentery, and haemorrhage are all complaints in which success has been met with by the employment of this agent, and in which it may be relied upon to produce satisfactory results, whether exhibited in its individual capacity, or in combination with other astringents; to these complaints may be added those of disordered stomach, even when extending to inflamed and debilitated states of that organ, or of the entire digestive apparatus, with ulcerated mouth and throat; in the latter affections it forms also a most suitable gargle. In uterine diseases it is of extensive reputation, and is highly recommended as of immense value; in obstructed, painful, and profuse menstruation, it is alike serviceable; in the two former of these disorders, the addition of a small quantity of cayenne, or a similar stimulant, being of service, although not absolutely necessary. It is employed in chronic leucorrhoea, as also in dysentery, as an injection, with the utmost success, while receiving internal employment simultaneously with its injection. As a drink before and during childbirth, it is perhaps unequalled by any other agent; it produces a healthy stimulus upon the uterine functions, and as the period of accouchement arrives, occasions safe and easy parturition; during labour especially, it will always be found of advantage to add a few cayenne pods to the infusion, which should be taken in frequent and copious draughts; prior to this period it may be taken in the quantity of a pint during the twenty-four hours. It is well to continue its employment, but without the cayenne, until the uterine functions are re-established in their normal condition. It is employed in flooding, miscarriage, and uterine haemorrhage, also in vomiting of blood, especially from the stomach.

RUMEX AQUATICUS :
WATER DOCK. GREAT WATER DOCK. RED DOCK.
RUMEX AQUATICUS. THE ROOT.
RUMEX. CRISPUS :
YELLOW DOCK. NARROW-LEAF DOCK.
RUMEX CRISPUS. THE ROOT.

Each of these docks is used in medicine, and each possesses properties very similar in their nature to the other. The properties possessed by each in common with the other, are those of a tonic, deobstruent, and alterative; while the yellow dock possesses also some amount of astringency, its power as a tonic is, perhaps, less marked than is the case with the water dock. The usual method of employment is that of the decoction. The water dock is employed both as medicine and as an application for eruptive and scorbutic diseases. and has been in great repute, especially among the Indians, as a wash for ulcers. At the present time. more employment is given to the yellow dock, as, except in its tonic action, for which it is seldom or never used, its effects are much more marked than those of the other species. It exerts an exceedingly powerful influence upon diseases of the blood, from the more common cases of spring eruptions, to the more serious ones of scurvy, scrofula, and chronic skin diseases; of course, in the treatment of the latter cases, especially after assuming a chronic form, it will not be supposed that cure can be effected in a short time, nor that dock, more than any other individual article, will, of itself, be sufficient to eradicate the taint; dock is, however, an agent possessing the highest adaptation to the treatment of this class of diseases. In cases where a more powerful action than that supplied by the separate exhibition of this remedy is required, a very useful medicine is furnished in the following formula: Take of dock (yellow preferably), burdock, and yarrow, each, one ounce; mandrake, a quarter of an ounce; boil in three pints of water to two; strain, and give in the usual dose, or in severe cases a pint may. be taken in the day. This offers a most valuable medicine for skin diseases, especially in obstinate cases which have reached a chronic stage. Should any tendency to a relaxed condition of the bowels be present, the mandrake is to be omitted from the medicine. Dock, is also useful in jaundice, and as a tonic to the stomach and system generally; it has an action upon the bowels very similar to that. of rhubarb, being, perhaps, only a 'little less active than that agent, but operating without pain or uneasiness; it is, therefore, well adapted for exhibition in any condition of the bowels. When the tendency is to constipation, it is found to impart a tone and stimulus to the bowels, restoring to them their proper action, and, where a too frequent evacuation is present, this forms no deterrent to the employment of this remedy, as in this case it is found to act as an astringent. The decoction of dock is employed as an external application to ulcers and sores, in conjunction with its internal administration; an ointment, also, is prepared from it, for use in similar indications, where such an application is required.

RUTA:
RUE. HERB-O'GRACE.
RUTA GRAV'EOLENS. THE WHOLE HERB.

Rue possesses stimulant, emmenagogue, and antispasmodic properties, exhibiting a determination to the uterine and nervous systems, and, in large doses, producing vomiting. It is a useful agent in coughs, croupy affections, retention and suppression of the catamenial discharge, colic, flatulence, and as a mild stomachic.

The infusion should always be preferred for exhibition, although it may be given, if desired, in substance; for coughs, croup, and pectoral affections, more especially in those cases where, from the violence of the cough, an irritable condition of the pulmonary system is produced, the infusion may, with advantage, be sweetened with honey. In chronic cough and lung complaints, it is employed with great benefit; a medicine of exceptional value in pulmonary affections of long standing is composed from the following formula: Take of rue, horehound, hyssop, marshmallow root, each, a quarter of an ounce; infuse in one pint of boiling water for fifteen minutes; strain, and add four ounces of honey; the dose of this preparation is one fluid ounce, which is to be repeated every two hours, and may be increased in quantity when this is found necessary. Administered in small doses, the warm infusion of rue acts admirably as an emmenagogue, exerting upon the uterus a combined stimulant and tonic impression, promoting a healthy action of the organ, removing obstructions which may have occurred in the organ, or in any part of the uterine system, and discharging any secretion which, through an insufficient menstrual evacuation, may have accumulated. In flatulence and colic, it is also given in the warm infusion, but, on account of its emetic tendencies, it is unsuitable for exhibition immediately after eating, as an aid to digestion. It forms a useful medicine in hysterical affections, especially those arising out of uterine disturbance; it has also received employment for the extermination of the round worm from the stomach.

SALVIA:
SAGE. GARDEN SAGE. RED SAGE.
SALVIA OFFICINALIS. THE WHOLE HERB.

Sage is slightly tonic and astringent, a fine aromatic, and possesses, also, diaphoretic and nervine properties to a useful extent. It is employed in flatulence and other complaints induced by cold states of the stomach and digestive apparatus, in night sweats, sleeplessness, colds, and obstructions, and as a gargle in some throat affections. The infusion, prepared in a covered vessel, is the form in which it is most suitably exhibited. From two to three fluid ounces of the warm infusion, taken upon retiring for the night, will generally induce healthy repose after narcotic exhibitions have lost all effect for this purpose upon the system. It is a valuable agent in the delirium of fevers, and in the nervous excitement frequently accompanying brain and nervous diseases, and has considerable reputation as a remedy in sickness, in all which cases it is given in small and frequently repeated doses; in the latter case, that of sickness, the dose generally will not exceed that of two fluid drachms. which may be repeated every five minutes until the attack has completely passed off. For the night sweats of consumption and other wasting diseases, it should be given cold, in two fluid ounce doses, before going to sleep for the night; the cold infusion has, by some, been preferred for this purpose, and, if any advantage exists between the two preparations, it is certainly in favour of the latter. A weak infusion has been successfully employed as a drink in fevers, and for this no better agent could, perhaps, be found; occasionally, however, patients are found to object to its flavour. Sage also offers a thoroughly efficient medicine for colds, measles, fever, and other disorders of infancy resulting from colds and obstructions. As a gargle in inflamed and relaxed sore throat, and ulceration, it offers a valuable remedy; when a more stimulating effect upon the throat is desired than that produced by the aqueous infusion, it may be obtained by preparing the infusion with equal parts of vinegar and water instead of with water alone. Sage is extensively employed as a culinary ingredient. and its medicinal properties render it most suitable for such employment.

SALVIA AGRESTIS :
WOOD SAGE. WILD SAGE. WILD GERMANDER.
SALVIA AGRESTIS. THE WHOLE HERB.

Useful as an alterative and diuretic. Wood sage receives little employment in regular practice, although in domestic practice it is used, and with advantage, for skin affections and diseases of the blood.

While not, perhaps, possessing any decided advantage over other agents of the same class, it is yet capable of a much more extended employment than it has hitherto received. In the chronic forms of rheumatism and rheumatic affections generally, it has also been used with benefit. The usual mode of administration is that of infusion.

SAMBUCUS:
ELDER.
SAMBUCUS NIGRA. THE FLOWERS, BERRIES, BARK, AND LEAVES

Elder flowers are diaphoretic and sudorific in proportion to the quantity administered, but find their principal employment in external applications, as for fomentations and poultices to swellings, and in the earlier stages of gatherings, boils, and abscesses, to discuss any collection of lymph; an ointment, also, is prepared from them, which is suitable in those cases where a cooling and emollient application is desired, as for cracks and chaps in the hands, lips, nipples of the breasts, and for similar purposes. The infusion is useful, and receives somewhat extensive employment, as a wash, in weakness of the eyes, dimness of vision, and twitchings of the eyelids. It is also of considerable reputation as an article of the toilet, as a wash for the complexion, which it is said to beautify and improve. The berries are alterative, diuretic, and aperient, and are of good service in affections of a rheumatic or gouty nature, and for those affections generally in which alteratives are indicated, and in dropsical complaints. The wine known as "elder," or "elderberry wine," is produced from these berries, and is adapted, in moderate employment, for all the purposes of the infusion. The inner bark is a strong diuretic and cathartic, similar in its properties to the berries, but acting with more celerity, and is more powerful in its operation, both upon the urinary organs and the bowels. The leaves exercise only a very strong and violent cathartic action upon the system, and are, therefore, considered unsafe for internal exhibition, having been known to produce strong inflammatory symptoms. Externally, they receive employment for the same purposes as the flowers already described. Sambucus ebulus, dwarf elder, known also as ground elder, of which the leaves only are employed, is an active diuretic, suitable in dropsical affections and suppression of the urine. It is exhibited in infusion. It is also suitable for external application for the same purposes as the flowers of sambucus nigra previously described.

**SANGUINARIA:
BLOODROOT.
SANGUINARIA CANADENSIS. THE RHIZOMA.**

Bloodroot possesses emetic, cathartic, expectorant, and emmenagogue properties. It finds its employment in coughs, pulmonary affections, consumption, inflammation, bleeding from the lungs, and to produce a diminution of the action of the heart when that organ displays a condition of undue activity. In small doses it forms a valuable stimulant, tonic, expectorant, and emmenagogue. In large doses it produces vomiting, vertigo, confusion in vision, and fainting. It is exhibited in a decoction containing the properties of half an ounce of the root in each pint. In lung diseases this decoction is given in the dose of two fluid drachms every two hours. In pulmonary consumption it is of the highest value, assisting expectoration, calming nervous irritation, and, in the case of an abnormally high pulse, restoring its normal condition. It is similarly useful in bronchitis, asthma, and difficulties of the respiratory apparatus. In heart disease, and weakness and palpitation of the heart, it is very useful; also in suppression of the menstrual evacuation it is employed with benefit. It has been given also, and with successful result, in some liver complaints, affections of a rheumatic and gouty nature, and for circulatory derangement.

The powdered root is usefully employed in the removal of fungus growths from unhealthy wounds, and as a stimulant for indolent wounds. For this purpose it is scattered upon the surface of the foreign element as frequently as the dressings upon the wound are removed.

Bloodroot possesses the very strong recommendation for employment in these cases, that its contact with healthy parts, adjacent to the growth it is desired to remove, produces upon them no similar result to that following its application to the diseased part. Upon healthy surfaces it exercises no caustic effect whatever. The powder is also taken through the nose, similarly to snuff, for polypus, upon which it exerts the same action as upon the fungus of wounds.

**SANICULA :
SANICLE.
SANICULA EUROPA. THE WHOLE HERB.**

Sanicle is expectorant, alterative, and astringent, finding considerable employment in diseases of the blood, skin affections, pulmonary complaints, and wasting diseases, and is suitable for both internal and external employment. It is employed in infusion or decoction for all purposes, both internally and externally. As an internal remedy it is exhibited with great benefit in all chest and lung complaints, chronic coughs and catarrhal affections, inflammation of the bronchii, spitting of blood, in pulmonary consumption, and all affections of the pulmonary organs. For the cough of consumption it appears to possess a special adaptation. Its action is unaccompanied with disturbance of the system; producing no excitement, and acting without danger of relaxation of the bowels.

It is also indicated in those debilitated conditions of the system arising out of long-protracted discharges, as from abscesses, ulcers, etc., where the health has, by constant discharge, become thoroughly undermined, and the blood rendered impure by the continual presence of the poisonous pus. Its action as an alterative is well defined and it possesses a useful reputation in the treatment of diseases indicating the employment of this class of remedies. It effectually cleanses the system of morbid secretions, and, cleansing the entire system, leaves the blood healthier and in a better condition in which to perform its proper functions throughout the economy. Sanicle is suitable for combination with both pulmonary and alterative medicines, and the greatest advantage is derived from its combination with other remedies with a view to either property. As a gargle, sanicle is used in sore throat, quinsy, and to astringe the throat in those collections of mucus incident to pulmonary consumption and some other diseases. In external application it is used as a wash, and is well adapted to scorbutic and scurvical affections, old sores, and all indications for an astringent application. In the scald head of children the infusion or decoction forms one of the most admirable external remedies at present in employment. In the case of rashes, which by friction, as by scratching, have formed suppurating sores, and in all chronic scorbutic affections it is indicated, and may be employed with the utmost reliance upon its effectually performing the action of a thorough cleansing agent.

**SAPO:
SOAP.**

SAPO DURAS. SOAP MADE WITH OLIVE OIL, AND SODA.

This article, although not used separately as a medicine, is of some importance in pharmacy, being employed as an excipient in pill making, and in the preparation of some plasters and liniments; it also enters into the composition of some enemata. Official preparation: Emplastrum Picis.

**SARZA :
SARSAPARILLA. JAMAICA SARSAPARILLA.
SMILAX SARSAPARILLA. THE ROOT.**

This is one of the best and most extensively used alteratives contained in the whole materia medica. In all diseases of the blood, and in skin complaints, eruptions, spring disorders, boils, and abscesses, it is given with the happiest results. The forms in which it is usually administered are those of decoction, infusion, and extract. In the treatment of all complaints arising out of an impure condition of the blood, scurvy, scrofula, and cutaneous diseases generally, it forms a most successful medicine. In chronic cases it is necessary, in order to obtain the fullest effects possible from its exhibition, that it be given in full and frequent doses. It is well adapted for, and extensively employed in, mercurial ulceration, and other unpleasant symptoms following a prolonged employment of this drug. It is less in repute for individual exhibition than for combination with other agents of similar properties to its own, as in the compound decoction of sarsaparilla described in its proper order. Sarsaparilla is also employed in rheumatism, gout, and dropsical complaints, but only in combination with other medicines; its employment as an individual remedy being of little reliability. Official preparations: Decoctum Sarzae Composita; Pulvis Sarzae Composita.

**SASSAFRAS:
SASSAFRAS.
LAURUS SASSAFRAS. THE BARK OF THE ROOT AND THE WOOD.**

Sassafras bark is diuretic, aromatic, stimulant, alterative, and diaphoretic. It is used in dropsical complaints, diseases of the blood, and in obstructed perspiration. It may be given in decoction or infusion; for individual exhibition the latter form being generally preferred. It is somewhat largely used also as an adjuvant to other medicines, the flavour of which is rendered more agreeable by its presence. As a diuretic it is not generally employed in its separate capacity; but, in cases which have not arrived at a chronic stage, it is, nevertheless, occasionally given with advantage. A valuable aromatic, it is capable of exhibition at any time, and in any condition of the system, when such an indication is present. In wind, spasms, and pain in the stomach and in the region of the heart, it is very useful. It should be given while warm for these indications, being found to act much more quickly and efficiently when so employed. In these cases it occasionally produces diaphoresis, on the commencement of which relief is at once experienced. It receives, in common with other gentle diaphoretics, employment in colds, the first stages of fevers, and in all cases where a gentle determination to the surface is desired. Sassafras receives its principal amount of attention, however, for its alterative properties. In skin diseases of all kinds it has long enjoyed an extensive reputation, and is most serviceable, chiefly, however, as an adjuvant to, or in combination with, other medicines.

In its individual exhibition its properties are less marked than when combined with other alteratives, as in the compound decoction of sarsaparilla, into the composition of which it enters, and which will be found described under its own heading. The wood, or, as it is most commonly known, sassafras chips, is occasionally employed as a substitute for the bark, to which, however, it is far inferior. It possesses very much of the flavour of the bark, and finds a large employment in the manufacture of herb beers, diet drinks, and the many beverages now in use, the colour and flavour of which it is found to improve, while, at the same time, adding to the medicinal strength of the preparation. Official preparations of the bark; Decoctum Sarzae Composita; Pulvis Sarzae Composita.

SCOPARIUS:
BROOM.
CYSTISUS SCOPARIUS. THE WHOLE HERB.

Broom is cathartic and diuretic, exhibiting, in large doses, an emetic tendency It is employed extensively, almost exclusively indeed, in dropsy and dropsical complaints, for which it is well fitted, forming a most valuable medicine. It is employed successfully in suppression and retention of the urinary secretion. It increases the discharge of urine, and, at the same time, acting somewhat powerfully upon the bowels, produces copious watery evacuations. It is given in the form of decoction, and is suitable for combination with any other medicines in complaints attended with a deficiency or suppression of the urinary secretion. Official preparation: Decoctum Scoparii.

SCROPHULARIA :
FIGWORT. WATER BETONY. THROATWORT.
SCROPHULARIA VULGARIS. THE WHOLE HERB.

The principal employment given to figwort is as a fomentation for inflammation, diseased parts, swellings, sprains, wounds, and for similar purposes. It is asserted of very great service in scrofulous sores, abscesses, and gangrene. A decoction of one ounce to the pint is employed, in which the wound is well bathed, and, afterwards, cloths wrung out of the same liquor are, generally, applied to the wound or surface to be acted upon, or the moist leaves may be applied as a poultice; the former method is, however, for obvious reasons, to be preferred. An ointment made from this herb has received employment in scrofulous sores and to prevent gangrene, but is inferior in its results to other articles in this class of preparations, to which reference will be found in the consideration of other articles in this work. The infusion has been employed internally as an alterative with asserted benefit; but many other agents are in use for this purpose possessing the alterative principle in much larger degree, and are to be preferred as producing results of more satisfactory nature more speedily, and with greater certainty of action.

SCUTELLARIA :
SCULLCAP.
SCUTELLARIA LA TERIFLORA. THE WHOLE HERB.

Scullcap possesses tonic, nervine, and antispasmodic properties. It offers a medicine of extreme value in nervous disorders, chorea, neuralgia, delirium tremens, nervous tremors, and is fitted to meet the indications in all cases for a nervine tonic. It is exhibited in infusion, which, when it is desired to produce a more than ordinarily speedy impression, should be given while warm. In the nervous affections of the head, it is employed with extremely satisfactory results; it is found most valuable in sleeplessness and other symptoms consequent upon over-taxation of the brain and loss of nervous energy; much benefit has also been obtained by its exhibition in convulsive twitchings, St. Vitus' dance, nervous disturbance, and in the delirium of drunkards; without narcotic action, it soothes the nervous excitement, inducing, when necessary to a proper condition of the system, sleep; not a dull, heavy slumber, from which the patient awakes with a sense of stupor and oppression, but sleep from which he arises refreshed and without any of the unpleasant symptoms following the administration of drugs for this purpose. In nervous headache, neuralgia, and in the headache resulting from heavy and incessant coughing and pain, it offers one of the most suitable and reliable remedies to which recourse can, in these cases, be had. Scullcap has also possessed a reputation in the treatment of hydrophobia; whether it is capable of employment with any actual beneficial result in this disease, is a matter of much dispute; it has been stated upon authority to be useful, not only when exhibited immediately after the bite as a preventive, but even where the disease has been unmistakably contracted, in effecting a cure, and is also reported to have received successful employment both in the ordinary practice, and upon animals who have been bitten. Official preparations: Pilula Assafretidae Composita; Pulvis Carui Composita; Pulvis Valerianae Composita.

SENNA:

SENNA.
SENNA ALEXANDRIA. THE LEAVES,

Senna is a prompt, efficient, and safe purgative, suitable for employment in all cases in which medicines of this class are indicated; in combination with bitters, the effects of its exhibition are rendered more powerful. By some of the older authorities, an alterative principle has been ascribed to it, but the probability is that this action has been attributed to it without the consideration that by carrying off the fetid humours from the system, the different organs are left in a more normal condition after its employment than was the case upon its administration, and this, it will readily be conceded, in many cases would produce an effect very similar in its results to that following upon the exhibition of an alterative. Senna, while well adapted for exhibition in its separate capacity as well as in combination with other agents, is occasionally apt to produce some amount of pain and griping; it is, therefore, advisable to employ some aromatic with it, as ginger or coriander, in order to correct any tendency to such symptoms.

It forms, in obstinate constipation, one of the most useful medicines in employment, when sufficiently powerful in itself to produce the desired evacuation of the bowels; this, however, it not unfrequently is unable, in its separate capacity, to perform, and a stronger agent, acting with it, is called for; where this is the case, the following formula has been found to provide one of the most useful, and, in all cases, safe, combinations to which employment is given: Take of senna, mandrake, and cloves, all in powder, equal portions; the dose of this is from one to two drachms, which may be given in any convenient vehicle. This is much more satisfactory in its results as an aperient than the common dose of epsom salts, or magnesia, and senna; it does not leave the bowels in the clogged condition, nor does it produce the heavy purging, followed by an aggravated costiveness, as is the case with the agents referred to, but, by producing a natural purge, and exerting a stimulant action upon the bowels, leaves them in a healthy condition, without any of the unpleasant symptoms usually in attendance upon the exhibition of heavy purgatives in confirmed constipated habits. Official preparations; Infusum Sennae Composita; Syrupus Sennae; Syrupus Spigeliae Composita.

SERPENTARIA:
SNAKE ROOT.VIRGINIA SNAKE ROOT.
ARISTOLACHIA SERPENTARIA. THE ROOT.

Stimulant, tonic, diaphoretic, and diuretic; the origin of its employment in medicine, as may be inferred from the name by which it is commonly known, was against the bites of venomous snakes, although for this purpose it has been abundantly proved useless, and, in consequence, has lost this reputation. Its exhibition takes place best in the form of infusion, as its properties are to some extent impaired by the boiling process. In large doses it will frequently give rise to considerable griping and nausea, accompanied, occasionally, with vomiting and purging; in ordinary doses it forms a valuable exhibition in malignant sore throat and diphtheria, in which it is used to advantage in the form of gargle as well as of medicine. In the chronic forms of rheumatism it is employed with benefit, and in dyspeptic complaints it is a very serviceable remedy, exhibiting a well-defined, although gentle, tonic action; it is also given in typhoid fever, and in other cases where, while a tonic is indicated, it seems undesirable to promote anything like copious perspiration; for a similar reason it receives much attention in measles, small-pox, and other eruptive diseases, when the eruption is tardy in making its appearance, or has received some check. Snake root is also said to possess nervine properties, and in those cases in which, in connection with disease or disorder of the system, symptoms of nervousness are present, it may with advantage be employed, but for purely nervous complaints it is not so well adapted as many other agents of more certain action as nervines.

SINAPIS:
MUSTARD. WHITE MUSTARD SEED.
SINAPIS ALBA. THE SEEDS.

These seeds, which are of stimulant, emetic, and vesicant properties, when swallowed whole produce a laxative influence upon the system, and, with this purpose in view, receive frequent employment; in dyspepsia and flatulence also, they are administered in the same manner. Another form of exhibition to which recourse is frequently had, is that of previously softening them in boiling water, thus rendering them of a mucilaginous consistency; in this form they are suitable for exhibition in suspension in syrup or a similar vehicle. Mustard should not, however, be given in too great quantity or frequency, owing to its capability of producing symptoms somewhat alarming in their nature. In the popular practice it is used as an emetic, and is certainly useful for this purpose, but it should not be given singly. In rheumatism, mustard is given with buckbean, a combination in which is offered a medicine of exceptional value in all forms of this disease, procuring relief in its worst forms, and, generally, in a very short period.

The ground seeds are also used as a poultice for local pain, but, owing to its vesicatory action, it is less suitable for this purpose than ginger, the poultice of the latter agent forming an excellent substitute in every indication for that of the agent at present under consideration, relieving all the symptoms calling for its employment, but producing no vesication, nor even any tenderness, of the surfaces upon which its application has been made. In baths, and for fomentations, mustard offers an admirable agent; for coldness of the extremities, and in pain in the stomach and abdomen, arising from chill or a cold condition of the system, its addition to the hot bath is attended with the happiest results. For bath purposes it may be employed without any apprehension of vesication or other unpleasant or undesirable consequences.

SPIGELIA:
INDIAN PINK. CAROLINA PINK.
SPIGELIA MARILANDICA. THE WHOLE PLANT.

This plant is employed only for its anthelmintic property; as a remedy against worms of all kinds it acts very powerfully, against the round worm, especially, its employment is peculiarly successful. It, may be given in substance, In infusion, or in decoction, the first method being preferred as producing results of the most satisfactory nature. Large doses are in most cases required, and should be repeated night and morning until the complete extermination of the worm or worms is produced; it is, however, requisite that some other agent accompany it, as its continued separate exhibition, even for a short period, produces symptoms similar to those following the exhibition of narcotics: vertigo, faintness and nervous sensations, especially in the head; this is, however, entirely obviated by the combination with this agent of a purgative, and for this combination senna offers a most suitable agent, equal proportions of each article being employed. The combined powders may be given in substance, a vehicle of honey or treacle being used for their administration; this, in all cases, forms the most effective exhibition, although cases are met with in which such an exhibition is utterly intolerable to the stomach; in these cases the infusion or decoction must necessarily be resorted to, but the effects of its exhibition in this form are much less satisfactory than those produced by its exhibition in substance. Official preparation: Syrupus Spigeliae Composita.

SPIRAEA :
MEADOWSWEET.
SPIRAEA ALBA. THE WHOLE HERB.

A useful sub-tonic and astringent. The infusion is given to correct the stomach and in diarrhoea, and for the latter complaint it forms a valuable medicine, imparting to the bowels some degree of nourishment as well as of astringency. It is not without some power as an alterative, and is occasionally employed in those affections of the blood common to the spring of the year. Possessing a pleasant taste and flavour, it is by many used as a substitute for tea and coffee, and is also usefully combined with other ingredients in the preparation of diet drinks and beverages, both for invalid and ordinary use; it enters extensively into the composition of the better class of "botanic" beers, which recently have become so common, imparting to them a grateful flavour, and, at the same time, adding to the medicinal strength of the beverage. A formula is given below as having proved most useful in the preparation of this class of beverage, and which is suitable alike for use by invalids and as a beverage in the ordinary way: Take of meadowsweet, betony, agrimony, and raspberry leaves, each, one ounce; boil in two gallons of water for fifteen minutes, and strain, while hot, upon two pounds of white sugar; when almost cool, put into small bottles without barm or yeast, and keep for a week, closely corked. If a bitter flavour is desired to be imparted to it, the addition of half an ounce of horehound will be found sufficient to accomplish the object.

SPIRITUS RECTIFICATUS:
RECTIFIED SPIRIT.
SPIRITUS TENUIOR:
PROOF SPIRIT.
SPIRITUS.

Spirit of wine is not used as a medicine, but as an agent in the preparation of medicines, it being, next to water, perhaps, the most extensively employed menstruum in their preparation. It receives employment as a preservative to medicines, and to some medicinal substances; in the extraction of the medicinal principle from agents the principle of which it is desired to obtain in liquid form, as in the case of tinctures; in dissolving those substances less easily soluble or totally insoluble in other menstrua; and in many other cases which will present themselves to the practitioner in pharmacy.

Its principal consumption is in tincturing, in which, while in some few cases rectified spirit is to be preferred, proof spirit, as a rule, is preferable as containing less alcohol, and being, therefore, more eligible for internal administration, while the amount of alcohol contained in this preparation is sufficient usually to exhaust the agent of its properties, and to prevent decomposition of the result of the operation.

**STRAMONIUM:
THORN APPLE.
DATURA STRAMONIUM. THE HERB AND SEED.**

Both herb and seed of this plant are used in asthma, especially in the spasmodically recurring forms of this disease, in difficulty of respiration, and in chest and lung complaints generally; owing, however, to its possessing strong narcotic property, amounting, indeed, to that of a poison, it is unsafe for employment internally, but all the benefit produced by its employment in the infusion may be derived from it by inhaling the, smoke from the burnt herb; this is done by means of the ordinary tobacco pipe, and is a perfectly safe method of employment; in this way it is used in all chest affections, chronic coughs, excessive expectoration, and to promote expectoration when difficulty is experienced by the hardness of the sputa, in expelling it, and in difficulty of breathing, in all these symptoms very great relief is afforded by its exhibition. Inhalation being in a very numerous class of cases the only means by which the more distressing symptoms of many pulmonary complaints can be met with anything like effectiveness, we have offered, by the means suggested here, one of the most useful agents in procuring the results desired, relief being frequently obtained by means of this process, when by no other has it been possible to secure it. It has been similarly employed in dyspepsia, but, as would appear, with no permanently good result, its action being almost exclusively upon the lungs and respiratory apparatus. An ointment prepared from stramonium has received considerable attention for piles, fistula, abscesses, and suppurating old sores, in which it is employed with great benefit; success has also been said to have followed its employment for pains in the joints and in rheumatic affections, to which cases it is applied with friction. For sores requiring a cleansing, and at the same time emollient, application, it is of extreme value. As an external application, stramonium appears to be less used at the present time than formerly.

**STILLINGIA:
QUEEN'S DELIGHT.
STILLINGIA SYLVATICUM. THE ROOT**

In large doses, an emetic and cathartic; in ordinary doses, a valuable alterative, exerting considerable influence as a stimulant upon all the secretions throughout the system. It is employed in skin diseases, eruptions upon the surface, disorders of the blood, and in hepatic complaints, Its exhibition may be performed in substance, decoction, or infusion. In rheumatism and obstructions of the circulatory system, scurvy, and in scrofulous conditions of the blood, it forms an exceptionally fine medicine, and receives an extensive employment; it is, by some who have acquired experience in its employment, stated to fulfill with the most perfect satisfaction all the indications for which mercury is ordinarily exhibited.

As a remedy in liver complaint, indigestion, and constipation, it is of great value, and may also be given in all cases, with the utmost confidence, to meet the indications for stimulants, as in torpor of the liver and bowels, sluggishness of the circulation, and in all atonic conditions of any organ, the only care requisite in its employment being with respect to its proclivities as an emetic when given in too full or frequent doses; this tendency, however, scarcely ever is found to develop itself except when the agent has been employed to an extent unusual with medicines.

**SYMPHYTUM :
COMFREY. KNIT-BONE.
SYMPHYTUM OFFICINALE. THE ROOT.**

Comfrey is demulcent, astringent, and expectorant. The decoction is of service in cough, pectoral affections, sore throat, spitting of blood, in pulmonary consumption, excessive expectoration, and for all abnormal discharges of mucus. In leucorrhoea and diarrhoea, in the former complaint more especially, it is highly esteemed, and receives an extensive employment. The strong decoction forms a useful, and at the same time pleasant, mucilaginous drink, which has been found of service in febrile complaints, pulmonary consumption, and wasting. diseases generally. It is suitable alike for separate exhibition and for combination with other medicines, and is frequently employed as a vehicle for less agreeable medicines than itself.

Employment can scarcely be given to a more useful demulcent than is here presented; in its entire action it is very similar, and scarcely inferior, to marshmallow; the decoction, indeed, being found to contain a much larger proportion of mucilage than that of the latter article; it is in many cases to be preferred to the marshmallow. As an external remedy, also, comfrey is of value; it is employed in the forms of both fomentation and poultice; as a fomentation to sprains, swellings, and bruises, and as a poultice to severe cuts, to promote the suppuration of boils and abscesses, and gangrenous and ill-conditioned ulcers. From its powerful effects as an astringent and stimulant poultice, it has earned the name "knit-bone," by which it is almost exclusively known in some country places. The leaves are also used externally for purposes similar to those for which the root is employed, but not to any extent, being so far inferior to the root for all purposes. Official preparation of the root: Pulvis Bistortae Composita.

**TANCETUM:
TANSEY.
TANCETUM VULGARE. THE WHOLE HERB.**

A bitter tonic, emmenagogue, and diaphoretic, possessing also some degree of nervine property, and useful in fevers, ague, hysteria, dropsy, and as a fomentation. It is given in infusion, and is employed to promote perspiration, and in fevers, more particularly in the low forms of fever, in ague, and hysterical and nervous affections; as a diaphoretic nervine, it is well adapted for exhibition in all cases in which the indications for such a combination exist. It is useful in the extermination of worms, and in worm fever is given with most satisfactory results. It forms an excellent and safe emmenagogue, capable of good service in painful, suppressed, and obstructed menstruation; in cases approaching to a chronic condition, the warm infusion should be drunk freely during a few days previous to the menstrual period, its employment being continued until the requisite amount of discharge has presented itself. This course is to be repeated at each succeeding period until the evacuation is performed regularly and in proper quantity. The decoction of tansey is highly recommended as a fomentation for sprains, tumours, ulcers, and other swellings and local affections of a painful or inflammatory character.

**TARAXACUM:
DANDELION.
TARAXACUM DENS-LEONIS. THE ROOT.**

Dandelion combines tonic and diuretic with slightly aperient properties, a combination rendering it most efficient and reliable as a medicine in those conditions of disease where dropsy and jaundice together are present in complication. For each of these diseases its exhibition is followed by admirable results, and may generally be considered sure to produce the impression desired upon the system or medicines employed in these cases, when a chronic condition has been reached, a constant employment, extending sometimes over a considerable period, is required to produce a result of satisfactory nature. Where, however, a possibility of cure exists, this medicine is to be, in by far the greater number of cases, relied upon to produce a beneficial result, its suitability in these cases being of a most marked and exceptional character. Limes are also well adapted for employment in respiratory affections of a spasmodic character, and especially in these forms of asthma.

**TORMENTILLA :
TORMENTIL.
POTENTILLA TORMENTILLA., THE ROOT.**

Tormentil is a simple and powerful astringent, receiving an extensive employment in diarrhoea and other abnormal discharges. The form of decoction is that in which its exhibition usually takes place; the dose of this preparation is from one to two fluid ounces, which is administered in diarrhoea and dysentery after each evacuation of the bowels, and in other cases at intervals of four hours' duration. In dysentery and diarrhoea, its action is that of an astringent only, but it is found to impart nourishment and support to the bowels, and, by means of this combined action, easily and naturally produces a more normal condition of the bowels, lessening the frequency of the watery evacuations, and restoring to them their normal consistency. Tormentil is especially recommended in the diarrhoea of consumption; its astringent action being entirely unaccompanied with any exciting influence upon any part of the system, it is of exceptional value in meeting these indications. In common with other medicines of its class, it receives employment as a gargle in sore, relaxed, and ulcerated throat, and to remove those collections of purulent mucus common to certain diseases in which the throat becomes involved.

In leucorrhoea it is employed as an injection with successful results; its action being of a strengthening and nourishing character, astringent, and giving tone to the uterus, and, indeed, to the whole uterine region, by which a diminution of the discharge is speedily produced, with its ultimate complete cessation. The powdered root has been employed as an errhine for bleeding from the nose; and in those cases in which the rupture has occurred near the orifice, or in such a position that the powder can be brought within easy access of it, it may be employed with confidence of a satisfactory result. The powder is also useful as a dentifrice, not only to cleanse and as a preservative to the teeth, but for scurvy in the gums, and to fasten loose teeth. Tonnentil is also in some places used as an agent in the process of tanning leather, and as a dye. Officinal preparation: Pulvis Tonuentillre Composita.

TRILLIUM:
BETH.
TRILLIUM PENDULUM. THE ROOT.

Beth is astringent, expectorant, tonic, and alterative. finding its employment in vomiting and spitting of blood, and other forms of internal hemorrhage, also in coughs, pulmonary affections, and consumption. It may be administered in substance; when given in this form, the dose is from ten to twenty grains, but the infusion is generally the more preferable as a mode of exhibition. In hemorrhage from any of the organs, lungs, stomach, bowels, kidneys, or uterus, and in leucorrhoea, it is of immense value, the hemorrhage being brought to a speedy cessation, and a tone communicated to the organ, giving strength and producing a normal condition and action of the organ. In indications for a simple astringent exhibition, beth is frequently, and with advantage, combined with raspberry leaves, by this combination the astringent principle of the agents appears to be augmented, this augmentation in their action being especially noticeable in discharges from the uterus and uterine system. A favourite combination for leucorrhoea and prolapsus uteri is formed of equal parts of beth and cranesbill, from which an infusion or decoction may be prepared, either of these forms being of equal suitability for employment, both as a medicine and, where indicated, as an injection. Another of the indications, perhaps the chief indication, for its employment, and in meeting this it forms one of the most effectual and reliable medicines to which employment can be given, is during and after accouchement; it facilitates the passage of the fetus, and afterwards the displacement of the placenta, and by its continued employment the organs are, by reason of its elegant astringent action, restored to their normal condition; for the purposes of a parturient it has been in use from time immemorial among the Indians. from whom possession was first obtained of its medicinal properties. As an expectorant, also, it has obtained a reputation equal to that earned by its astringency. Tonic, astringent, and expectorant, it is well fitted for, and receives an extensive employment in, the treatment of pulmonary consumption; its exhibition is not followed by disturbance in any part of the system; diarrhoea, febrile, and other unfavourable symptoms are entirely unprovoked by its operation. In other pulmonary complaints, particularly in those accompanied with a hard, dry cough, and deficient expectoration, and in those cases in which the expectoration is of a purulent nature, and accompanied with blood, it is also employed with the utmost benefit. A useful medicine in these chronic stages of chest disease is composed of the following: Take of beth, marshmallow, liquorice, and cherry bark, each, a quarter of an ounce; boil in one pint of water for ten minutes, and strain. It may be given both as to quantity and frequency ad libitum; for children, the same medicine might conveniently be exhibited in the form of a syrup. As an external remedy, beth is serviceably employed as a poultice to old wounds, ulcers, ill-conditioned and indolent tumours, and for similar purposes. The infusion, or decoction, is also useful in bleeding, as from varicose affections, as a local application in the form of a fomentation.

ULMUS:
ELM. SLIPPERY ELM.
ULMUS FULVA. THE INNER BARK.

Demulcent, diuretic, emollient, and expectorant, and possessing these properties in the highest degree, slippery elm forms one of the most admirable medicines in employment in urinary, bowel, and lung complaints, sore throat, inflammation of the mucous membranes, and in all diseases involving these membranes, and in which the indications exist for the exhibition of demulcents. The usual method of employment is that of a decoction made from the bark, or an infusion of the powdered bark, the latter forming, on the whole, the more preferable method of exhibition in either way; more especially when the latter mode of preparation is adopted, it is of a decidedly mucilaginous consistency. This is given with success in diarrhea, dysentery, debility of the uterine system, and in uterine discharges; for these purposes, however, its powers may be considerably augmented by the substitution of milk for water in the preparation of the infusion. In catarrhal complaints, including catarrh of the bladder and uterus, and in lung complaints generally, more especially when accompanied with debility and copious discharges of mucus, it is extremely valuable.

Perhaps the best form in which it can be given for these indications is that of a food, for which it is prepared in a manner similar to that employed in making up arrowroot as an invalid food. This forms one of the finest articles of diet which can be used in wasting diseases and emaciation. In pulmonary consumption it forms one of the best, if not, indeed, the best of foods to which employment can possibly be given; when the patient has arrived at that condition when nothing more in the shape of food can be taken into the system to be retained than this, it is found sufficient in itself to preserve life for an indefinite period of time indeed, cases are recorded of many children who, from birth, have been fed upon this and no other food whatever, and children so treated in the matter of food are invariably strong and healthy. Prepared in this form, slippery elm is at once tonic and expectorant, giving tone to the system, assisting expectoration. and. exerting an influence the most beneficial in its nature upon all the organs of the body; it is employed not only in consumption, but in inflammation of the lungs, pleuritis, bronchitis, and similar complaints, and in all cases in which blood is expectorated. Both the watery infusion and the food, preferably the latter, are of the utmost value in the aphthous sore mouth, or thrush, of infants; also in mucous discharges from the urinary organs; and it is well adapted for combination with diuretics and other medicines designed for affections of the bladder, kidneys, and urinary passages; exerting, as it does, a most beneficial emollient action upon these organs, and, at the same time, imparting a useful tonic impression to them. No absolute rule as to the exact proportion of the agent proper to a given quantity of infusion can be stated, some patients only being prevailed upon to take it when of a thickness similar to that of milk, while others will prefer it of the consistency of a thick gruel; the proportions of the powder and milk, or water, as the case may be, will therefore be varied as may best accord with the taste or fancy of the patient. Powdered slippery elm also forms one of the most valuable poultices with which the most experienced practitioner is acquainted for the removal of pain, to allay inflammation, and induce a speedy suppuration in boils, gatherings, and other indications for the employment of a suppurative poultice, as in abscesses, tumours, cancerous sores, and wounds of long standing. As a poultice, it maintains a deservedly high reputation.: indeed, the properties rendering it of such exceptional value for this form of employment can scarcely be overstated. It is as well adapted for continued employment after suppuration. as previous to this taking place, the reason for which is to be found in its elegant emollient and healing propensities. When once, by the agency of this poultice, a wound has been healed, no apprehension need be entertained as to the soundness of the cure. It heals by producing, in the first place. a healthy condition of the diseased part, promoting the healing process only in the proportion in which it is able to produce a soundness of the affected part, thus effectually preventing any possibility of a subsequent re-opening of the wound. This poultice is adapted to, and may always be given employment in, any case where a poultice is indicated. Official preparations: Cataplasma Ulmi; Cataplasma Ulmi Composita; Unguentum Althre.

UVA URSI,
UVA URSI. BEARBERRY.
ARBUTUS UVA URSI. THE LEAVES.

Uva ursi is astringent and tonic, possessing excellent diuretic properties, its entire action being principally confined to the urinary apparatus. It is employed in diseases of the bladder and kidneys, and in urinary derangements generally; for stone, gravel, incontinence of urine, and in urinary catarrh and ulcerated conditions of the urinary system, it forms a medicine of extreme value. The infusion is to be preferred, although the decoction may be given, there not being sufficient difference to render the infusion of any very material advantage. It is given with much benefit in catarrh of the bladder. whether recent or chronic in its origin, urinary calculus, gravel, stricture, and in retention and suppression of the urine. A medicine of extreme service in these complaints is prepared from the formula subjoined: Take of uva ursi, marshmallow root, poplar, each, half an ounce; infuse in one pint of water for twenty minutes. Uva ursi is an excellent urinary tonic. strengthening and imparting tone. to the urinary passages, and useful in all weak and debilitated conditions of these organs, and in mucous discharges and ulceration of the kidneys, bladder, and entire extent of the urinary system. In incontinence of urine it is of extreme value, its action as an astringent being nowhere manifest so much as upon the urinary secretions. It forms a good medicine, also, in leucorrhœa; and has received some amount of employment in pulmonary consumption with benefit

VALERIANA:
VALERIAN.
VALERIANA OFFICINALIS. THE ROOT.

A gentle stimulant, antispasmodic, and nervine tonic. It is used in nervousness, face and toothache, neuralgia, and nervous disorders generally.

Its great advantage is that, while possessing nervine properties in an eminent degree, it combines with it no narcotic or other harmful principle; in very large doses, given in quick repetition, it has been known occasionally to produce heaviness and pain in the head, with stupor and general nervous disturbance; in the ordinary dose, however, it exerts an influence quieting and soothing in its nature upon the brain and nervous system. The form of infusion is the one in which its exhibition usually takes place, the dose of which is two fluid ounces, which is to be given four times during the day. It is employed with the utmost success in the treatment of hysteria, epilepsy, and heart disease, and, as a remedy for these diseases, has acquired a good reputation. In the restlessness and delirium of fevers, also, it is highly valued, and, frequently, when exhibited in the earlier symptoms of delirium, will effectually prevent this condition, by calming the nervous excitement and inducing a state of rest and repose in the system; as a preventive to apprehended delirium, it is, of course, necessary that its employment be continued till DO further cause for apprehension exists. Two fluid ounces of the infusion have been given at bed time for the prevention of sleeplessness, and to this purpose valerian would appear to be well adapted, the more so since no ill effects are experienced from its exhibition, and that its action is such as to produce a perfectly natural sleep, from which, upon awaking, no stupor nor feeling of heaviness is experienced, as is frequently the case when the drugs ordinarily employed for this purpose are resorted to, but with this, as is the case with other medicines employed for the same purpose, its effect diminishes, and finally disappears altogether. Valerian is well adapted for use, also, in combination with other nervines and antispasmodics, where, from an inefficient individual action, or other cause, a combination of these agents appears desirable. In the more serious nervous diseases, as St. Vitus' dance, epilepsy, paralytic. and similar affections, the following medicine has been exhibited with success: Take of valerian, snake root, cohosh, each, half an ounce; infuse in one pint of water for fifteen minutes, strain; two fluid ounces may be given four times, or, in the more severe affections, oftener, during the day. Official preparation: Pulvis Valerianre Composita.

VERBASCUS :
MULLEIN. MULLEIN DOCK.
VERBASCUS THAPSUS. THE LEAF.

Astringent, demulcent, emollient, and gently anodyne. Its principal employment is in diarrhoea, hremorrhoids, cough, pulmonary complaints, and consumption. In diarrhoea, the ordinary infusion is generally exhibited; but when any discharge of blood accompanies the evacuations, it is of immense advantage to employ a decoction prepared with milk, in the proportions of one ounce of mullein to each pint of milk; after boiling, it is strained in the ordinary way, and a dose of from one to two fluid ounces should be given after each evacuation of the bowels. Mullein is of the more value in diarrhoea from its combination of demulcent with astringent properties, by this combination strengthening the bowels at the same time at which it exerts upon them its astringent action. It is also most useful as an agent in the treatment of piles; for this complaint its efficacy is very much augmented by employing the decoction in milk, prepared as already described; the same preparation is successfully exhibited in coughs and all the indications for the employment of emollients. It has been extensively advertised, in some towns especially, as a certain cure for pulmonary consumption; but if any cases of this disease have been cured by the administration of this agent, they must have been very slight ones indeed; that it is well adapted as an adjuvant to other medicines in the treatment of this disease is certain, but it is only as an emollient drink, or, in the case of the decoction with milk, as an article of diet, that it is useful to relieve some of the more prominent among the distressing symptoms; to expect more from it than this is most certainly to sow the seeds of disappointment. For employment in consumption it may, with propriety, be combined with Iceland moss in equal quantities, the combination of which should be boiled in milk, as already directed for the separate employment of mullein. Mullein leaves are also used for external application as a poultice to piles, and the infusion from the flowers of the plant has been employed as a strengthening wash to weak eyes, and as a hair wash for the promotion. of the hair growth.

VERBENA,
VERVAIN. BLUE VERVAIN.
VERBENA OFFICINALE. THE HERB.

Tonic, nervine, diaphoretic, and antispasmodic, Vervain receives employment in cold, fever, as a nerone tonic, and in spasms, indigestion, colic, and other complaints arising from a cold or debilitated condition of the digestive apparatus, or of the system generally. The form of infusion is the usual and best form for its exhibition. In colds, cold conditions of the stomach, flatulence, griping, and spasmodic affections of the respiratory apparatus, it is found to possess an additional advantage in being exhibited warm and in frequent doses; for coughs it is usual to sweeten it, or to administer it in syrup, and to the more recent cases of this class of affections it is admirably adapted, but is not so well adapted for chronic lung diseases.

As an antispasmodic it is thorough and reliable in its action, giving prompt and satisfactory relief to the symptoms indicating its employment. It is an excellent nervine tonic, possessing considerable power and efficacy in lowness of the nervous system, and those conditions of the brain produced by over-work, anxiety, and an over-strung condition of the nerves, thus indicating an adaptation for the nervous disorder, delirium, and sleeplessness of some forms of fever, to which symptoms it is found to answer with the utmost satisfaction. It has also met with considerable employment in nervous headaches and nervous disorders generally.

VIBURNUM:
CRANBERRY. CRAMP BARK. HIGH CRANBERRY.
VIBURNUM OPULUS. THE BARK OF THE ROOT.

A valuable antispasmodic, possessing also nervine and tonic properties, and employed in spasms, debility of the stomach and adjacent organs, in nervous complaints, convulsions, and hysterical affections. It may be administered in infusion or decoction. An antispasmodic, combining in itself with this property considerable power as a nervine tonic, it is of especial value in the treatment of those hysterical affections more or less closely allied to spasms, flatulence, and wind at the stomach and in the region of the heart, and the nervous disturbance common to many women during pregnancy, sickness, dizziness, fainting, with their attendant disorders. It is employed with benefit in all nervous complaints and debility, finding a wide range for its employment among convulsions, fits, lock-jaw, spasms, palpitation, rheumatism, neuralgia at the heart, and heart disease, for all these indications being given with signal success, and being suitable alike for exhibition individually and in combination with other medicines. VISCUM:

VISCUM
MISTLETOE.
VISCUM ALBUM. THE WHOLE PLANT GATHERED WHILE IN FULL BERRY.

An antispasmodic nervine. The infusion is given with benefit in epilepsy, fits, paralysis, and other diseases of the nervous system; it has been employed in tooth and face aches, neuralgia, and similar complaints of the head and face, but does not appear to have found such successful employment in the latter complaints as in the more serious and distressing ones already enumerated. It is popularly supposed that the mistletoe growing upon the oak is of greater efficacy as a medicine than that growing elsewhere; but in actual practice it is found that no difference exists whatever between that growing upon this particular tree and that derived from any other source of growth. As the properties of mistletoe by exposure to the air become considerably impaired, it should always, after drying, be preserved in as air tight a condition as possible.

XANTHOXYLLI BACCIE:
PRICKLY ASH BERRIES.
XANTHOXYLLUM FRAXINEUM. THE BERRIES.
XANTHOXYLLI CORTEX:
PRICKLY ASH BARK.
XANTHOXYLLUM FRAXINEUM. THE BARK.

The bark is stimulant, tonic, and alterative. It receives an extensive employment in impurities of the blood, and obstructions of the circulatory system, coldness of the surface and extremities, rheumatism, and in some forms of neuralgia. It may be given either in decoction or infusion. In rheumatism it is of especial value, and in chronic conditions of this disease has been exhibited with results of a most satisfactory nature; when separately employed, it is administered in frequent doses, but for ordinary employment it is exhibited to the greatest advantage in combination with other medicines. A formula is subjoined which offers a useful medium for its exhibition: Take of prickly ash bark, guaiacum wood, buckbean, each, half an ounce; cayenne pods, six; boil in one and a half pints, of water to one pint. It is given in the usual dose. Prickly ash bark offers, also, a useful tonic in debilitated conditions of the stomach and digestive organs, and may, with propriety, be admitted to employment as a stimulant to digestion in cold states of the stomach, and where any tendency to flatulence and dyspepsia exists. As an alterative, its action is similar to that of mezerion, and it has been asserted, in common with the latter article, to be capable of producing salivation; but this, so far as an extended personal experience and observation goes, is not found to be the case, nor, indeed, has the least tendency of this agent towards producing such a result been noticed. As an alterative, it is generally employed in combination with other medicines of its class, in those cases in which it seems desirable to increase the temperature of the system, or to induce a more active circulation of the blood.

The powdered bark forms an excellent application to indolent ulcers and old wounds, upon which it exerts a cleansing and admirably astringent action, stimulating them to a healthier appearance, and ultimately drying up and healing the wounds. Prickly ash berries possess exactly similar properties to those already described as belonging to the bark, but in a considerably greater degree, and are frequently found more speedy in their action. In addition, however, to the properties already enumerated, the berries possess antispasmodic and nervine properties, and may be employed with perfect confidence either to produce a separate nervine and antispasmodic impression, or in cases in which an exhibition is called for having these objects in view simultaneously with those served by the other properties of the agent.

**ZINGIBER,
GINGER.
ZINGIBER OFFICINALIS. THE RHIZOME**

This is a warm stimulant aromatic, carminative, and expectorant, useful in cold states of the system, debility of the digestive apparatus, colic, and flatulence. The infusion from the bruised or ground ginger is usually the best form of employment, and in many cases it will be found of advantage to exhibit this infusion while as warm as it can be conveniently taken into the system; in colic, wind, spasms, and similar derangements this is in all cases preferable to a cold exhibition, as its action is thus obtained more quickly; in indigestion, dyspeptic complaints, and diarrhoea, this method of administration is not necessary, indeed, in the latter complaint, the exhibition is, for obvious reasons, to be preferred when cold. Ginger is principally employed as a corrigent to bitter, aperient, and other medicines capable of producing pain and other symptoms of an unpleasant nature; and with those medicines to which a warm, agreeable aromatic action is desired to be imparted. It is frequently chewed in the mouth for toothache and relaxed throat, and is employed by some public speakers -- to maintain a supply of moisture in the mouth during the exertion of speaking. The ground or powdered ginger is also substituted for mustard in poulticing, possessing all the properties rendering mustard eligible for this purpose, but without its vesicant tendencies. Official preparations: Cataplasma Ulmi Composita; Pulvis Carui Composita; Pulvis Composita ; Pulvis Hydrastidis Composita; Pulvis Tormentillae Composita.

PART II.
PREPARATIONS.

PART II.

PREPARATIONS.

Having in the previous part of this work considered the capabilities of the individual agents of this pharmacopoeia employed for the relief and cure of disease. we come now to the consideration of the methods of effecting their presentation in the forms best calculated to fulfill the indications designed to be met by their exhibition.

COLLECTION AND PRESERVATION.

The proper time for collection varies somewhat with the different parts of the plant employed, and also in different plants. The roots of annual plants should be gathered just before flowering; those of biennials after the plants have ceased to grow the first year; and those of perennials in the autumn or spring, after or before vegetation. After being gathered, they are to be washed, and the fibrous parts, except where these constitute the medicinal part, removed: the roots should then be sliced, and afterwards carefully dried. Barks, from whatever part of the plant derived, whether from the root or upper portions, are to be gathered during the same period of the year as already directed for the roots of perennials. Leaves must be gathered as early as possible after the flowering of the plant, and, except in the case of annuals, do not attain a condition such as to render them suitable for medicinal employment before the second year of their growth. Flowers generally are to be gathered immediately upon opening; seeds, when perfectly ripe; and where the whole herb, stem, leaves, and flowers, is used in an indiscriminate whole, it is to be gathered just before the flowers burst. The gathering should in all cases take place in the morning of a dry day, after the sun has dried the dew from the plants, and while in as dry a condition as possible. The drying process by which the medicines of this pharmacopoeia are rendered capable of preservation and employment, should be as rapid as is possible without its producing deterioration in the medicinal value of the agents; usually this process will, in the cases of herbs, leaves, and flowers, be best performed in a dry and well-ventilated apartment; but with roots and most barks it will be found necessary, in order to secure a degree of dryness compatible with their efficient preservation, to resort to the aid of artificial heat. The agents being after this process in an efficient state of preservation, and containing their full medicinal properties, & in the condition in which they are usually met with in the shops. In order, however, to obtain their medicinal principles in the best possible form for exhibition in disease, many other operations are necessary, as pulverisation, tincturing, infusion, decoction, &c., the most important of all, perhaps, being that of pulverisation.

PULVERISATION.

This process is necessary, in many instances, as a means of presenting an agent in such a form as to render practicable its exhibition in syrup, honey, or a similar vehicle, and in the formation of pill mass in which powders frequently represent some of the principal ingredients. It is not, however, for these purposes alone, that the process of pulverisation is employed; it offers one of the best methods, in many cases the only method, by which it is possible to obtain the medicinal principle in liquid form of a desired substance, as, presenting the largest possible amount of surface to the action of the menstruum, it is more easily penetrated by the latter agent and divested of its properties. The process is, therefore, extensively employed as a preliminary to various other processes, and to such an extent as to render it important to the practitioner in pharmacy to keep on hand a quantity of the articles so used in their powdered as well as in their crude forms. Pulverisation may be performed by contusion or grinding, the former term being employed to the process when performed by aid of the mortar and pestle, and the latter when performed in the ordinary grinding mill. With either method an alternate course of pulverisation and sieving is to be employed. The agent having been brought by contusion or grinding into such a state of division as to be retarded in its further division by the finer particles, it is taken from the mortar or mill, placed in the sieve, as much passed through as is sufficiently finely powdered to do so, and the remainder returned to the mortar or mill in which the operation is performed, to again go through the powdering process, until of such a degree of fineness as again to be ready for the sieve. Sieves of various "mesh," or degrees of fineness, are employed, as it is desired to obtain a coarser or finer powder, and are made of wire, hair, and silk; wire being generally preferred in those of larger mesh, and hair and silk in those of closer or finer mesh. Other operations are described in the portions introductory to each class of preparations as separately treated upon in the following pages. Perhaps a word of explanation may be advisable in this place. In the older works on Medical Botany the acid preparations were ordered to be made from malt vinegar; in the present work it has been deemed advisable to employ diluted acetic acid in this class of preparations; if preferred, the older menstruum may, of course, be given employment; the diluted acetic acid of this work is, however, in all cases to be preferred. This explanation was suggested by a practitioner of long standing and experience, and on the suggestion so given I gladly act. It has been thought advisable in the preparation of this part of the work, throughout to retain the names of the various medicines by which they have, from long. use, become very generally known, as "Stomach Powder," "Stomach Pills," &c., these names being employed as secondary synonyms.

AQUAE : WATKILS.

Waters are those preparations of volatile substances in which the substance is held in suspension in water. This is properly accomplished by distillation; but in most cases an equally satisfactory result is obtained by the trituration of a small quantity of the essential oil of the particular plant. the properties of which it is desired to obtain, with some substance capable of bringing it into a greater state of diffusibility in the water, to which, having been previously so prepared, it is added. To secure the requisite diffusion of the oil throughout the- whole quant~ of water, various substances have been proposed; but there in most favour are powdered sugar and carbonate of magnesia, the latter being the more preferable in consequence of the sugar dissolving in water, and being, therefore, almost wholly irrecoverable by filtration; this is not the case with magnesia, which, being insoluble in water, is readily separated by filtering, no further need of its presence being requisite after the desired diffusion has been obtained. Distilled Water should in all cases be employed.

AQUA ANISI : ANISEED WATER.

Take of oil of aniseed, half a fluid drachm; carbonate of magnesia, sixty grains; distilled water, two pints, Triturate the oil with the magnesia, and gradually add the water, subsequently filtering the whole through paper. This preparation is designed more as an adjuvant to cough and other medicines than for individual employment; it is, nevertheless, useful in the spasms and wind of children.

AQUA CINNAMOMI : CINNAMON WATER.

Take of oil of cinnamon, half a fluid drachm; carbonate of magnesia, sixty grains; distilled water, two pints. Triturate the oil with the magnesia, and gradually add the water, subsequently filtering the whole through paper. Cinnamon water forms an excellent adjuvant to unpleasant and griping medicines. Care, however, is to be exercised in its exhibition in cases accompanied with inflammation, or symptoms suggestive of the condition.

AQUA MENTHAE PIPERITAE: PEPPERMINT WATER

Take of oil of peppermint, half a fluid drachm; carbonate of magnesia, sixty grains; distilled water, two pints. Triturate the oil with the magnesia, and gradually add the water, subsequently filtering the whole through paper. This is one of the most useful and popular of this class of preparations as a vehicle for, or corrigent to, other medicines, and, while effectually qualifying the flavour of the medicine, it, at the same time, corrects any unpleasant effects which might otherwise be produced.

CATAPLASMATA: POULTICES.

By the term poultice is understood a moist substance intended for application locally to inflammations, gatherings, boils, and affections of a similar kind, to promote suppuration or relieve pain and inflammation, of a consistence sufficiently soft as to adapt itself to the surface to which it is to be employed, while not so soft as to run to any of the parts -adjacent to that upon which it is placed. It has been recommended in the preparation of poultices to mix with the ingredient a certain quantity of olive oil, with a view to prevent its undue adhesion to the surface or wound to which it is employed. and, at the same time, to prevent the poultice from becoming hard and dry, as frequently is the case, especially with poultices applied in cases exhibiting any degree of inflammation; a better method, however, than that of the incorporation of oil with the poultice and which secures both the objects for which the oil is introduced, is to wrap a wet cloth on the outside of the poultice, which, upon becoming dry, is removed, re-wet, and placed upon the application as before; this secures the amount of moisture necessary in the poultice, without the presence of oil, which, in many cases, is rendered unsuitable by its heating properties. It will, of course, in the case of wounds, depend very generally upon the amount of discharge as to, how long the poultice shall remain unchanged; as a rule, however, it may be taken that a change twice during the twenty-four hours will be sufficient, except in extreme cases, where an unusual amount of discharge takes place.

**CATAPLASMA LINI:
LINSEED POULTICE.**

Take of linseed meal and bread crumb, equal quantities; boiling water, a sufficiency, Mix the linseed and bread crumb thoroughly together, and then, while constantly stir- ring," add gradually the boiling water until a paste of the required consistence results. The meal from which the oil has not been abstracted should always be preferred for poulticing, as being far preferable; this constitutes the "crushed linseed" of the shops in distinction from the "linseed meal," from which the oil has been previously expressed. See LINUM.

This poultice is employed to promote the suppuration of boils, carbuncles, &c., and to clear out and cleanse old wounds and sores, and is in most, if not in all, cases to be preferred to the simple poultice of linseed; the bread crumb of the present poultice rendering it so much lighter and more effective in producing the desired suppuration of the wound.

**CATAPLASMA ULMI:
SLIPPERY ELM POULTICE**

Take of slippery elm, carefully powdered, one ounce; cold water, half a fluid ounce; boiling water, a sufficient quantity. First beat up thoroughly the powder with the cold water, and then add gradually the boiling water, constantly stirring until a paste of the required consistence results. Very great care is necessary in the preparation of this poultice, as, unless great attention is paid to it, especially during the addition of the boiling water , the whole quantity will resolve itself into an unworkable mass.

**CATAPLASMA ULMI COMPOSITA:
COMPOUND SLIPPERY ELM POULTICE.**

Take of linseed meal and slippery elm, each, half an ounce; ginger, in powder, a quarter of an ounce; cold water, half a fluid ounce; boiling water, a sufficient quantity. Carefully rub the powders together, preferring, as in the linseed poultice, that linseed containing its oil; add the cold water, and having beaten all up together, add gradually the boiling water, constantly stirring until a paste of the desired consistence results. These poultices are well adapted for all cases in which this class of local applications is indicated. In inflammations, and to promote or continue the suppurative process, they are unsurpassed, and, in the majority of such cases, unequalled. As an emollient poultice, as in the case of inflammation and pain, the former of the two poultices will be the more suitable; the latter, or compound poultice, is to promote the suppuration of boils, abscesses, carbuncles, and to cleanse and remove the fetid pus and purulent collections from old wounds and running ulcers and sores. For these purposes it is found to act admirably, possessing much more power than the simple poultice, to which it is far superior, with regard both to its effectiveness and period of its operation, which is much shorter. The presence of linseed produces a strong suppurative action, while the painful, dragging sensation experienced from the employment of the simple poultice of linseed, is qualified by the elm, The object for which ginger is introduced into its composition is to promote the expansion of the surface of the wound, and so give better egress to the discharge. This latter poultice should be constantly used until the wound is thoroughly cleansed of all purulence, when recourse may be had to the former one, in order to promote the healing process, a course which it will be found effectually to take, with a certainty of freedom from its again forming a gathering. In some cases, of course, other means than poulticing will be indicated for this purpose; when, however, it is deemed advisable to carry on the healing process by means of poulticing, the simple slippery elm poultice will be found the most suitable and reliable one to procure this result which can be employed for the purpose.

**CONFECTIONES,
CONFECTIONS.**

Under this one general head are included actually two classes of preparations-confections and electuaries; - the two classes being so nearly allied to each other, that recently they have become known by the one general term, confections. They consist of soft substances, of a consistence similar to that of honey, or a little more solid.

The confections proper are made by a thorough incorporation of the powdered medicinal substance with refined sugar, which, in all cases, is to be brought into a condition of very fine powder, in order to secure its more effectual mixing with the substance; this incorporation, which is generally performed by the aid of the mortar and pestle, preserves the medicinal properties of the substance intact for a greater or lesser period, the extent of time varying with the different substances so acted upon, some retaining their strength for much longer periods than others.

These preparations are useful, not only for convenience in exhibition of the medicine which they already contain, but as a vehicle for other medicines, and an excipient in pill making. Electuaries are those preparations, employed for the administration of medicines, in which the medicinal matter is suspended in such a vehicle as to present the preparation of a consistence such as to enable it to be swallowed without mastication; the vehicles principally used for this purpose are honey and syrup, either of which will generally be found equally eligible for employment. This form is very suitable for the administration of those medicines which, by their unpleasantness, would be offensive to the patient when exhibited in another form, and is especially adapted for the exhibition of those medicines which it is requisite to give in substance. Treacle has in some cases been employed, but many stomachs will not tolerate it as a vehicle for medicines; it, nevertheless, in certain cases possesses decided advantages over other agents. In the case of confections which, by keeping, have become hard, their former consistence may be restored by the addition of a sufficient quantity of syrup to effect this object.

CONFECTIO FILICIS COMPOSITIE, COMPOUND MALE FERN CONFECTION.

Take of pulvis filidis composita, one ounce; treacle, three ounces; mix. Or, the same quantity of honey may be employed instead of the treacle, if desired; the treacle should, however, in all cases be preferred when it can be tolerated, as being of greater efficacy than the substitute proposed in the honey. This is the best method for the exhibition of this medicine, and offers at once a safe and effectual remedy against all kinds of worms. The dose for an adult is from half a drachm to a drachm, night and morning; for children, half that quantity will be sufficient, and in their cases may be administered once or twice in the twenty-four hours, as may be rendered more desirable by its action upon the bowels, or other circumstances.

CONFECTIO PIPERIS COMPOSITIE: COMPOUND CONFECTION OF PEPPER. PILE ELECTUARY.

Take of pulvis piperis composita, one ounce; honey, two ounces; olive oil, half an ounce; mix thoroughly together. This confection is one of the most reliable preparations in hemorrhoids and constipation; it has frequently been known to effect complete cure in the most obstinate and chronic cases. both of piles and constipation of the bowels. The object of the introduction into the formula of the oil is that, while it preserves the preparation from contracting any degree of hardness, it also keeps the bowels in a state of regular action, by this means rendering valuable assistance to the other ingredients of the composition. The dose is half an ounce three or four times a day, as indicated by the urgency of the case or the degree of constipation accompanying.

CONFECTIO ROSE: CONSERVE OF ROSES.

Take of fresh red rose petals, four ounces refined sugar, in fine powder, eight ounces; beat the petals in a marble mortar to a pulp, and gradually add the sugar till the whole is thoroughly incorporated. Confection of roses is in extensive employment as an excipient in making pills, and, with very few exceptions, probably is the best adapted agent for use in that capacity, being found to preserve pills soft for a great length of time without deterioration of their medicinal properties. It is also serviceable as a vehicle for the administration of nauseous and unpleasant medicines; and may be given as a mild tonic where a medicine grateful to the stomach but without stimulant propensity is indicated.

DECOCTA: DECOCTIONS.

Derived entirely from the vegetable kingdom, the form of decoction offers one of the best, most convenient. and therefore common. methods of administering the medicines of this pharmacopoeia.

Decoction will be found in most cases to be the method best adapted for the abstraction of the medicinal virtues from the agents it is desired to exhibit in disease. Being of a nature unsuitable for long keeping, it is advisable that preparations of this class be always made fresh when required for use, decomposition taking place in a very short time unless special means are resorted to in order to secure their effectual preservation. When desired to be kept for a longer period than forty-eight hours, the decoction must be strained while hot, and placed in heated bottles, accurately stoppered, before being allowed to cool, the bottles being quite filled and the stoppers made to displace their bulk of the liquid; after this the bottles must be kept in a cool place to remain unopened until required for use. As a rule, therefore, small bottles are to be preferred for this purpose, rather than those of larger size. Decoction is not, however, in all cases admissible as a method of exhibition of medicines, this being particularly the case with regard to those agents containing a volatile principle, which are generally better treated by infusion-an operation much more suitable to their nature than that of decoction. in which the volatile principle is, to a very great extent, even where not entirely, thrown off. Another class of medicines unsuitable for decoction is composed of those substances which, in addition to their medicinal properties. contain starchy and insoluble matter which can only be extracted at high or boiling temperatures. In the preparation of decoctions, care must be taken that covered vessels only are used, with the least possible opening, the opening being large enough only to allow of the necessary escape of steam, in order to prevent undue access of air during' the operation. Vessels composed of glass, earthenware, or tinned iron are the most suitable in which to make this class of preparations; iron is not to be used when substances of an astringent nature are to be operated upon, and copper, brass, and zinc vessels are in all cases to be carefully avoided. Dry substances are, in all cases, to be well bruised previous to boiling, and those of a fibrous nature are better acted upon by previous maceration in cold water. In no case is the boiling to be protracted for a longer time than is absolutely necessary to secure the proper solution of the medicinal ingredients contained in the substance employed, and it will, in most cases, be advisable to strain the decoction while hot, as by this means turbidity of the fluid, which otherwise might occur upon cooling, is very largely, if not entirely, avoided In making compound decoctions, in which one or more of the ingredients employed owe their activity to a volatile principle or principles, it will be necessary, in order to present the decoction of its proper representative strength of the ingredients used, to make the decoction of those ingredients not possessing the volatility, and, while hot, to pour the decoction upon these agents in a covered infusion vessel, allowing it to cool before admitting any air to contact with the preparation.

**DECOCTUM CINCHONJE:
DECOCTION OF PERUVIAN BARK.**

Take of Peruvian bark, bruised, one ounce; water, a sufficient quantity; boil for ten minutes in one pint of water in a covered vessel, and strain, adding sufficient water through the strainer to make the product measure sixteen fluid ounces. This forms one of the most suitable methods for administration of this agent, and is one of the finest tonics in employment. The dose is from one to two fluid ounces, three or four times a day, as required.

**DECOCTUM SARZAE COMPOSITA:
COMFOUND DECOCTION OF SARSAPARILLA.**

Take of Jamaica sarsaparilla, sliced, two ounces and a half; sassafras chips, guaiacum wood, liquorice root, each, quarter- of an ounce; mezerion, sixty grains; water, a sufficient quantity. Digest the ingredients in a pint and a half of water for an hour i boil for ten minutes in a covered vessel, and strain, adding sufficient water, through the strainer, to make the product measure one pint. This forms a fine medicine for scurvy, scrofulous, and other skin diseases, and as an alterative generally. See SARZA. The dose of the decoction is from four to six fluid ounces, three or four times a day.

**DECOCTUM SCOPARII,
DECOCTION OF BROOM.**

Take of broom tops, dried, half an ounce; water, a sufficient quantity. Boil for ten minutes in half a pint of water in "a covered vessel, and strain, adding sufficient water, through the strainer, to make the product measure eight fluid ounces. This is useful as a drink in dropsical complaints, for which purpose it may be taken to the extent of a pint during the day.

**EMPLASTRA:
PLAISTERS.**

Plaisters are solid, compound substances, adhesive at ordinary temperatures of the body, and requiring to be heated upon application, in order to secure their proper adhesion to the body upon cooling. They are intended as local applications to relieve pain, to communicate strength in atonic conditions of some of the internal organs, and to promote the suppuration of swellings, tumours, and abscesses. In the preparation of plaisters it is requisite that a too great or long-continued application of heat be avoided; as many ingredients entering into the composition of these preparations are impaired by an undue application of this agent. When the compound is prepared, it is usually spread upon leather, muslin, or linen, leather being best adapted when the plaister is designed for unbroken surfaces, and either of the two latter fabrics for dressing wounds in which it is necessary to bring in conjunction the lips of cut and abraded wounds. In spreading the plaister, a margin of, say, an inch in extent, should be left on the fabric round the actual size of the plaister, in order to prevent its adhesion to the clothes of the wearer, or the adjacent parts; the better to effect this, it is recommended that a fiat piece of metal, of width similar to that required for the margin round the plaister, be laid upon the outside edges of the leather or other fabric upon which it is applied, the plaister being laid on inside the margin, and, of course, spread up to the frame so made: A piece of paper may be utilised for this purpose on emergency. For plaisters of peculiar shape, the shape may similarly be cut out of paper, which, being laid upon the fabric to, receive the plaister, will, by spreading it within the enclosed space so made, upon cooling present the plaister of the desired shape. The spreading is accomplished by means of the ordinary plaister spatula, or by machines for the purpose. The plaister, having first been melted, and the ingredients thoroughly incorporated in one mass, is placed upon a piece of tin, or some similar receptacle, where it is allowed to remain until only just warm, when, by means of the spatula, it is removed to the leather or other fabric, and carefully and evenly spread upon its surface, the spatula having previously been brought to the necessary degree of heat to properly accomplish this object. After spreading, the plaisters are allowed to cool, and are afterwards made up into rolls and enclosed in paper. They should be kept as free from the access of air as possible, as this causes them to dry and crack, and some plaisters are apt to lose their adhesiveness by this means.

EMPLASTRUM PICIS : PITCH PLAISTER.

Take of Burgundy pitch and brown soap, each, one ounce; resin, eight ounces; Venice turpentine, half an ounce. "Melt the soap, afterwards adding the pitch and resin; when all are properly melted together, add the turpentine, and mix thoroughly. This forms an excellent plaister for old wounds which require a considerable amount of drawing to abstract the morbid discharge, and is adapted for employment to wounds of all kinds accompanied with copious discharges of pus. It also forms a very strengthening agent and is frequently I resorted to with advantage as a local application for pain and weakness.

EMPLASTRA RESINIE, RESIN PLAISTER SALVE

Take of resin, two pounds; mutton suet, previously rendered and strained, four ounces; beeswax, two . ounces. Melt the wax and suet together, and afterwards add the resin; when melted, mix thoroughly. This is a most efficient plaister for general employment in all cases where this class of preparations is called for. It is indicated in gatherings. boils, carbuncles, scrofulous and running sores, to promote the suppurative process, and to continue it until the purulent matter is entirely discharged. It is of the utmost value for tumours and ulcerous sores, glandular enlargements of pus, and for poisoned and venomous conditioned wounds; in all these cases it has been employed with great advantage, and is highly esteemed by all who have experienced its effects. It has been known to remove needles, rust, pieces of metal, and other foreign substances which have become embedded in the flesh, and produced suppuration without the cause being known; and pieces of decayed bone have frequently been removed from abscess by its application. This plaister has also the additional recommendation of inducing a healthy condition of the diseased part, and promoting its eventual healing; this, however, never takes place, under its employment, until the wound is totally cleansed of all foulness and disease.

EXTRACTA: EXTRACTS.

Extracts are solid bodies, representing very strong preparations of the medicines from which they are made. The method by which they are obtained is that of evaporation of the decoction, infusion, tincture, or expressed juice of the substance the medicinal properties of which the extract is designed to represent when made.

As already mentioned, the medicinal properties are first extracted from the substance by express on of the juices, decoction, infusion, or tincturing, as is best suited to the different agents to be operated upon. In the case of those articles from which the extract is best obtained from the expressed juice, the fresh plant-or, if it is not perfectly fresh, it should previously be immersed for an hour or two in water, after which it may be proceeded with in the same manner as the fresh plant-must be well bruised in a mortar, and then placed in a bag of canvas or coarse linen material, and subjected to pressure; these operations are to be repeated alternately until all the juice has been expressed. For the methods of extraction of the medicinal principles by decoction, infusion, and tincture, reference should be made to those preparations, as mentioned under their separate heads. It is frequently desirable, in making extracts, that the substance remain for a longer time in contact with the menstruum than is the case in decoction, infusion, or tincture, and it is a good plan, when in such cases the medicinal principle is yielded by boiling, to - boil the same substance twice, or even oftener, using a fresh supply of the menstruum for each operation, repeating this operation until the whole quantity is thoroughly exhausted of its properties. When this method of obtaining the solution is resorted to, each successive portion must be kept separate from the others, that obtained last not being added to the one obtained previous to it, until by evaporation it has been brought to a consistency similar to that of the former one, when the two may be put together and evaporated till of a consistence proper for addition to the next former product By this means no greater exposure to heat takes place than is absolutely necessary to the proper reduction of the product to the state of extract Evaporation is performed by subjecting the product, obtained by the operation already mentioned, to a temperature sufficiently high to cause the escape by steam of the superfluous water r other menstruum, leaving behind the medicinal principle. In the case of those medicines which remain uninjured after a long application of heat, it is best to perform the evaporating process by a quick boiling over the fire j the more quickly this is effected the better, but the evaporation. cannot be finished by this means, as the extract, if allowed to remain at this heat, would become burnt, and therefore unfit for use. When, therefore, the liquid has attained the consistence of a thick syrup, it should be removed, and the operation completed at a lower temperature. Very few substances, however, are suited for evaporation at such high temperatures, and it is, therefore, necessary to conduct the operation with a much lesser heat; indeed, it may be safely stated that, in the preparation of most extracts, the evaporation should be performed at the lowest possible temperature. Care should be taken throughout the entire process of reduction, that the extract is not allowed to adhere to the sides of the vessels in which the operation is performed, as, when this has been allowed, it becomes dry and hard, and is with difficulty, if at all, properly re-incorporated with the remaining portion. When near completion of the evaporation, it will be necessary that the mass be frequently stirred, as by this means not only will the remaining evaporation proceed more rapidly, but the adhesion to the sides of the vessels will be more effectually prevented. In the case of those extracts made from tinctures, the spirit may be distilled off before the ordinary evaporative process is put into effect, and the spirit so recovered will be eligible for use for similar. purposes again. By this means a considerable item of cost in preparation is obviated.

**EXTRACTUM CALUMBIE ,
EXTRACT OF COLUMBO.**

Take of columbo, in powder, one pound; proof spirit, a sufficient quantity. Moisten the powder with proof spirit, pack it into a percolator, and pour upon it proof spirit until four pints have passed. Distil off the spirit and evaporate the remainder by gentle heat to a proper consistence. This extract contains the full medicinal properties of the root, and - may be given, in all cases, to meet the same indications. The dose is from five to fifteen grains, three or four times a day.

**EXTRACTUM GENTIANIE ,
EXTRACT OF GENTIAN.**

Take of gentian, in powder, one pound; water, a sufficient quantity. Moisten the powder with water, pack it into a percolator. and pour upon it a quantity of water sufficient thoroughly to exhaust it of its medicinal principle. Evaporate the result by means of a gentle heat to a proper consistence. The evaporation may be carried on by a quick boiling until reduced by three fourths of its bulk; but the- previous method is to be preferred, except in cases where time is an object. For the uses of this preparation, reference must be made to GENTIANA, in Part I. It is suitable, in all cases, for employment in substitution for the crude article. The dose may be increased from ten grains, in the commencement of its administration, by degrees, to thirty grains, from two to four times a day. Official preparation: Pilula Aloes et Rhei.

**EXTRACTUM RHEI
EXTRACT OF RHUBARB.**

Take of Turkey rhubarb, in coarse powder, one pound; rectified spirit, half a pint; water, a sufficient quantity. Moisten the powder with rectified spirit, pack it into a percolator, and pour upon it the remaining rectified spirit; when it has passed, this portion of the product is to be set aside, and a quantity of water must be poured upon the powder, sufficient thoroughly to exhaust it of its medicinal principle. By means of a low temperature, evaporate the latter product to the strength of that formerly obtained, from which distil off the spirit, and mix the two quantities together, continuing the evaporation at the same temperature, till the product is of a proper consistence. Care is to be taken that at no period during the whole process is a temperature higher than 160° permitted, as, unless this be strictly adhered to, the extract will, as a medicine, become valueless. The dose of this extract is from ten to thirty grains, to be repeated as may appear necessary. It contains the full properties of the root. Official preparations: pilula Aloes et Rhei ; Pilula Podophylli Composita.

EXTRACTUM TARAXACI, EXTRACT OF DANDELION.

Take of fresh dandelion root, any quantity. Bruise it well in a stone mortar, express the juice, and evaporate at a low heat to the proper consistence. This forms one of the best methods, if not, indeed, the best method, for the exhibition of this medicine. It answers all the purposes for which the crude article is employed and may, in all cases, be substituted for it with propriety. See TARAXACUM, Part I. The dose is from half to one drachm, three times a day. Official preparation; .Pilula Taraxaci.

EXTRACTA FLUIDA, FLUID EXTRACTS.

Fluid extracts are made in the same manner as the extracts previously under notice, but with the difference that the process of evaporation is not continued for such a length of time as to resolve them into the solid form assumed by the class previously described. In all fluid extracts, spirit, in greater or lesser degree of strength, must be employed as the menstruum; it is also necessary to introduce spirit-sugar, or a combination of the two agents, into the preparation, with a view to the prevention of decomposition, which must otherwise necessarily result. The proportion of sugar necessary to their efficient preservation is one ounce by weight for each fluid ounce of the preparation.

EXTRACTUM SARZAE FLUIDUM COMPOSITAE : COMPOUND FLUID EXTRACT OF SARSAPARILLA.

Take of compound :sarsaparilla powder, one pound proof spirit, a sufficient quantity; sugar, twelve ounces. Moisten the powder with proof spirit; pack it into a percolator, and pour upon it proof spirit sufficient thoroughly to exhaust it of its medicinal principle. Distil off the spirit from the product, and evaporate by a gentle heat to fourteen ounces; then add the sugar, and, by further evaporation, reduce to sixteen fluid ounces. This extract contains in each fluid ounce the principle of one ounce of the compound powder, and may, therefore, be employed in the same manner as the crude ingredients. The dose is one fluid drachm three or more times a day.

INFUSA: INFUSIONS.

Infusions are preparations similar in their nature to decoctions, but with the difference that while the latter are obtained by boiling the substance to be operated upon, infusions are obtained by a simple maceration of the substance, for a longer or shorter time, in hot or cold water. The mode of preparation usually adopted is that of pouring upon the ingredient, or ingredients, contained in a covered vessel, a proper amount of boiling water, allowing it to remain covered till cool, and afterwards straining. The advantage in the employment of infusions over that of decoctions is that, a lower temperature being required, starch, and other inert substances, are not so frequently found dissolved with the medicinal principle as in the case of decoctions when kept at a boiling temperature even for a short time. The presence of these inert substances not only is a frequent source of injury to the medicine, and of a consequently decreased or perverted action, but renders the preparation mouldy and liable to decomposition. The object gained by the employment of hot or boiling water, as is generally preferred in the form of infusion, is that the medicinal principle is more quickly and effectively, in most cases, dissolved than is the case when cold water is employed as the menstruum.

Some substances require a much longer time than others for infusion, and in these cases the most convenient method of prolonging the operation to its necessary limit will be to place the vessel containing the preparation in a warm place near the fire. Cold infusions are, however, of great advantage, especially when the substance to be acted upon contains a volatile principle which in the heated infusion would in many cases be driven off. For cold infusions a longer period of maceration is required than is the case with those prepared with boiling water. In the preparation of infusions the percolator may, with propriety, be employed, as in the preparation of tinctures. This is the case especially where the cold infusion is designed, as the operation is by its aid carried on more effectually, and in much less time, than would be required for maceration. The ingredients from which the infusion is to be prepared must, previous to the operation, be bruised, sliced, or in the powdered state, in order to present the largest possible surface to the action of the menstruum. Infusions are best made in common pot or porcelain vessels, the use of vessels of a metallic composition being strictly avoided. Rain, river, or distilled water should be preferred in all cases for this class of preparations. Infusions are not adapted for keeping long, and are, therefore, to be prepared as required for use.

INFUSUM ANTHEMIDIS, INFUSION OF CHAMOMILE

Take of chamomile flowers, half an ounce; boiling water, half a pint. Put the flowers in a vessel with a good cover; pour the boiling water upon them, and cover, so as to prevent the escape of steam [allow it to cool], and strain. Take of chamomile flowers, half an ounce; cold water, half a pint. Put them together in a covered vessel and macerate for twenty-four hours; afterwards strain. These infusions are the best modes of administering this medicine; the latter being most acceptable to most stomachs, and of the greatest utility as a tonic and stomachic. The dose is from one to two fluid ounces, three times a day. The former preparation is most suitable for employment as an adjuvant to emetic medicines, and must, when exhibited with this object, be given in copious and frequent doses, while warm. It may, however, be in all cases substituted for the latter formula; it being sometimes desirable to give the infusion when there is not time to wait for the cold infusion to be prepared.

INFUSUM KRAMERIAE ET ROSAE: INFUSION OF RHATANY AND ROSES

Take of rhatany, in powder, one ounce; rose flowers, crushed, one ounce; water, a sufficient quantity. Moisten the ingredients with water; pack into a percolator, and pour upon it sufficient water to produce one pint. If time is an object in the preparation of this infusion, the ingredients may be macerated in the same quantity of boiling water in a covered vessel for five minutes, and strained. The cold infusion should always be preferred. This offers one of the finest remedies for hemorrhages from the head, lungs, stomach, or bowels, which can possibly be used [its action is quick and effective]. It should be given in a dose of two fluid ounces four times a day.

INFUSUM SENNAE COMPOSITA COMPOUND INFUSION OF SENNA

Take of senna, half an ounce; rhubarb and coriander seeds, crushed, a quarter of an ounce each; boiling water, one pint. Infuse the whole in a covered vessel for one hour, and strain. This forms a useful aperient medicine, which may be used as a vehicle for more drastic purgatives. The dose varies from one to three fluid drachms, according to age and other circumstances of the patient.

LINIMENTA LINIMENTS.

A class of preparations designed for external application being generally applied by friction upon the skin, and always of a liquid consistence at ordinary temperatures of the body.

LINIMENTUM CAMPHORAE: LINIMENT OF CAMPHOR.

Take of olive oil, two fluid ounces; spirit of camphor, two fluid ounces; spirit of hartshorn, half a fluid ounce. Mix. This is a useful liniment in rheumatic and gouty affections, sprains, and weaknesses of the joints and bones.

LINIMENTUM CAPSICI:

LINIMENT OF CAYENNE

Take of cayenne, in powder, two ounces; diluted acetic acid, a sufficient quantity. Moisten the powder with one ounce of the acid; pack into a percolator, and pour upon it sufficient diluted acetic acid to produce one pint This forms one of the best rubefacient liniments in employment. It is used with very great advantage in rheumatism, sprains, and neuralgic affections. It should generally be rubbed briskly upon the surface of the affected parts; indeed, this is in all cases, where it can be borne, the best mode of its application. In some conditions, however, this cannot be effected, as in the cases of facial nervous and other disturbances, to which the most effectual means of its employment will be supplied in the application of a saturated flannel bandage upon the seat of pain or disturbance. In the chronic forms of rheumatism, gout, and lumbago, it is often desirable, in the intervals of its application by friction, to apply a piece of Hannel or a bandage similarly saturated with the liniment as already mentioned.

This liniment also affords a most valuable external adjuvant to the treatment of sore throat and chest affections; it is also of extreme utility for enlarged joints.

LINIMENTUM EUPHRASIAE: LINIMENT OF EYEBRIGHT, EYEBRIGHT LOTION.

Take of eyebright herb, cut small, two ounces and a half; proof spirit, ten. ounces; water, two pints. Boil the herb in the water for fifteen minutes; strain, and evaporate till ten ounces remain. Allow it to cool, and add the proof spirit; after being allowed to remain for twenty-four hours longer, again strain. Liniment of eyebright is used extensively, and with success, as an eye lotion in inflammation of the eyes and adjacent parts, dimness of vision, and general affections of the organs of sight. As a tonic for the eyes and visual nerves, strengthening and improving the power of vision, it may be used with entire confidence. Sometimes a prolonged employment will be necessary, in order to secure from it its utmost benefits, but perseverance for a short time will invariably bring satisfactory results where any possibility of cure exists. It should be applied over the closed eyelid once in every three or four hours.

LINIMENTUM MYRRHAE COMPOSITA: COMPOUND LINIMENT OF MYRRH.

Take of myrrh, in coarse powder, one ounce; aloes, cayenne, and camphor, all in coarse powder, a quarter of an ounce each; proof spirit, a sufficiency. Moisten the powders with a sufficient quantity of the proof spirit; pack it into a percolator, and pour upon it proof spirit until one pint has passed. The compound myrrh liniment is one of the most useful stimulant and astringent liniments to which employment is given for ulcers, abscesses, old green wounds, and sores of cancerous nature or tendency. It is employed also, in conjunction with poultices, plaisters, and similar applications, to promote the suppuration of tumours and other swellings which exhibit a tardiness in arriving at that stage. For bruises, inflammations, and indications of a festering nature, it is of the utmost benefit in arresting the progress of the poison, and discussing the substance where there is such a possibility; and where such a possibility does not exist. as already mentioned, it will be found useful as a stimulant to suppuration.

PILULAE : PILLS

Pills offer a convenient form for the administration of medicines which require to be given in substance, and, from an unpleasant flavour, are apt to create a feeling of nausea when taken into the system in another form. The great advantage offered by this class of preparations is that they are of such convenient size as to be swallowed without their taste being perceptibly noticed, and are, therefore, on this account more acceptable to the stomach than when presented in other forms. In the preparation of this class of medicines it is necessary first of all to incorporate thoroughly the whole of the ingredients into one mass. Some of these preparations do this readily; but by far the greater proportion of the pills in regular employment require some agent in addition to their active ingredients to secure that tenacity necessary to their proper adhesion to compose a pill mass, For this purpose various means have been proposed, of which some, while perfectly admissible in certain pills, would be totally inadmissible in others. The excipients principally in employment are confections, extract soap, syrup, mucilage of gum, treacle, and glycerine, When it is desired to preserve a quantity of pill mass soft, and in a state of readiness for use at any lime, the best excipients will be found in conserve of roses and treacle; for heavy powders, confections, extracts, and soap, are best adapted while for the lighter powders the other means are principally employed.

With regard to the employment, as an excipient, of gum mucilage, it is to be noted that not only is a considerable quantity of the mucilage required to render the mass of a proper degree of tenacity, but it produces an undesirable hardness in the pills when dry; and it is always to be borne in mind that one of the chief objects to be aimed at in pill making is that, upon exhibition, they are in a condition of ready solubility by the juices of the stomach. To give the requisite firmness of consistence to soft substances and liquids, it is necessary to incorporate with the ingredients some dry inert substance, for which purpose liquorice, starch powder, or bread crumb, are as well adapted as any other agent which can be suggested. When the mass is properly prepared, it is made into pills with the ordinary pin machine, or rolled by hand into "pipes," as the lengths obtained by this process are called, of a thickness similar to that desired in the pill, and then divided into pieces as nearly as possible to the size desired; the spherical shape being afterwards imparted to them by rolling between the hand and a smooth slab, giving to the hand a circular motion. To prevent their adhesion after completion it is usual to give them a coating of some dry powder, as liquorice, starch, or lycopodium, which is done by rolling the pills in the powder, giving to them, while rolling, a circular motion, in order to more effectually preserve their shape. They are afterwards to be gradually dried, frequent rolling being given during the drying process, so as to secure the admission of air as nearly as possible upon the whole surface of each pin equally. When pins are designed for keeping for any length of time, it is requisite that they should be placed in close-stoppered bottles and kept in a cool place.

PILULA ALOES ET RHEI
PILL OF ALOES AND RHUBARB, STOMACH PILLS.

Take of soccotrine aloes, cayenne, lobelia, all in powder, extract of rhubarb, each one ounce; extract of gentian, a sufficient quantity, Form a mass, and divide into four. grain pills. A valuable pill for weak stomachs, loss of appetite, and debility of the digestive system. This preparation forms an excellent general medicine, and is frequently met with under the name of "Family Pills," The dose is two or three pills at bed-time, which may be augmented or decreased as the pill exerts a stronger or weaker influence upon the bowels. In cases of extreme weakness of the stomach, however, it will, occasionally, be found advisable to give one pill before each meal, as by this exhibition a stimulus and tone are given to the digestive apparatus, rendering its operation easier and less distressing; and, as a consequence, the patient feels the greater desire for food.

PILULA ANTHEMIDIS:
CHAMOMILE PILL

Take of extract of chamomile. half an ounce; aloes. in powder, half an ounce; liquorice in powder a sufficient quantity. Form a mass, and divide into four-grain pills. This preparation is seldom prescribed, but the formula is given as being one which admirably adapted to the purposes for which this pill is used in popular practice. It may, however, in certain cases, be given with advantage as a tonic and mild cathartic. The dose is from two to three pills, or more, during the twenty four hours.

PILULA ANTHEMIDIS COMPOSITA:
COMPOUND PILL OF CHAMOMILE, INDIGESTION PILLS

Take of rhubarb, cayenne, lobelia, valerian, all in powder. half an ounce; oil of cloves, one drachm; extract of chamomile, a sufficient quantity. Form a mass, and divide into four-grain pills. This pill is given in dyspepsia, spasmodic attacks of wind, pain in the stomach and abdomen, especially when occurring after eating, and is well adapted to those nervous disorders consequent upon chronic dyspepsia and liver complaint. It also offers one of the most useful medicines for employment in chronic constipation; after a short period of use the bowels are found in a state of greater activity, a condition which quickly removes the torpor, and restores the normal action of the liver and digestive organs; and it is worthy of remark that its aperient action is unaccompanied with pain or excessive purging, a natural action being secured... the whole alimentary system. It may be given to patient of the most weakly and delicate constitutions, and without distinction of age or sex; it forms a remedy of extreme value in some forms of sickness and especially in that peculiar to pregnancy. The dose is from two to three pills once a day for chronic disorders, but in the more recent and acute attacks a divided dose will generally be found to produce better results, in these cases most probably the greatest advantage will be derived from the exhibition of one pill three times. or oftener, during the day.

PILULA ASSAFOETIDAE COMPOSITA :
COMPOUND PILL OF ASSAFOETIDA NERVE PILLS

Take of assafoetida, scullcap, and cayenne, in powder, each, half an ounce; extract of valerian, one ounce; mucilage often a sufficient quantity. Form a mass, and divide into grain pills. This compound offers a tonic, nervine, and antispasmodic medicine of value in hysteria, neuralgic affections, and general nervous disturbance, possessing a special fitness for the debility and sleeplessness frequently accompanying this disorder; it is also given with advantage in the dyspepsia peculiar to a high degree of nervous excitement. It may also be employed in spasms of wind, and in spasmodic asthmatic affections.

**PILULA CAMBOGIAE COMPOSITA;
COMPOUND PILL OF GAMBOGE. APERIENT PILL**

Take of gamboge, soccotrine aloes, and mandrake, all in powder, each, half an ounce; rhubarb, cayenne, in powder, each, two drachms; oil of cloves, two fluid drachms; extract of butternut, a sufficient quantity. Form a mass, and divide into four-grain pills. This formula presents an elegant aperient medicine, producing a natural action of the bowels, without leaving, after its exhibition, the constipation frequently attendant upon the employment of powerful drastic agents. It may be so given as to produce the effect of the mildest aperient, or of a very strong, cathartic, either action being obtained by a diminution or increase in the quantity or frequency of the dose. One or two pills will be found a sufficiently large dose to produce the former action, while for a full cathartic effect three or even four may be given at a dose. The peculiar and distinguishing feature of this from other preparations of a similar nature is, as has been already alluded to, its thoroughly efficient action, and the total freedom from weakness and constipation usually experienced after exhibition of the ordinary remedies for this purpose. So mild is this pill in its action that it is given with perfect safety to those of the most delicate constitutions. The dose, of course, will be repeated in frequency as indicated by the activity or inactivity of the bowels.

**PILULA LOBELLE COMPOSITA;
COMPOUND PILL OF LOBELIA.**

Take of lobelia, in powder, half an ounce; ammoniacum and cayenne, in powder, each, a quarter of an ounce; mucilage of gum, a sufficient quantity. Form a mass, and divide into four-grain pills. The compound pill of lobelia is one of the most valuable medicines, and receives most extensive employment, in all pulmonary affections. In bronchitis, asthma, coughs, and catarrhal complaints, it acts admirably, and with great power. In affections of an asthmatic nature it is especially worthy of attention. It is given also with benefit in consumption; in the latter disease producing a freer expectoration, and affording relief to those frequently-in some patients especially-recurring cramps in the chest produced by the weakness following upon the incessant coughing in chronic chest and lung disease. The ordinary dose is two pills night and morning; but, as the pill produces no purgative effects, the dose may be increased both in quantity and frequency; indeed, cases are on record - extreme cases they were, of course-in which eighteen of these pills have been taken during the twenty four hours.

It is scarcely necessary to be said, however, that such doses are not only unnecessary, but inadvisable. In all pulmonary complaints, more especially those of old and infirm persons, this pill affords one of the finest medicines capable of employment. One pill may be given after eating, in those cases in which spasmodic attacks of breathlessness are found to occur after taking food into the system.

**PILULA PODOPHYLLI COMPOSITA;
COMPOUND PILL OF MANDRAKE. ASTIBILIOUS PILL.**

Take of aloes, in powder, one ounce; lobelia and columbo, each in powder, and extract of mandrake, each, half an ounce; extract of rhubarb, a sufficient quantity. Form a mass, and divide into four grain pills. As a remedy in bilious and liver complaints this is a thoroughly reliable formula. A pill, similar in its composition to this, has been in extensive use for a long time, with results of a most successful nature constantly following its employment. In bilious headaches, and other affections of the head proceeding from derangement of the liver, this pill is particularly serviceable. This is the case also in those complaints arising from an insufficiency of the biliary secretion, in all which complaints the pill now under notice is most beneficially employed, acting not only as a stimulant to the production of the desired secretion, but in the removal, at the same, time, of any obstructions which may be present in the liver or bowels. The dose may be stated at from one to three pills during the day, which may be given at one dose or at intervals during the day, as may seem best indicated by the condition of the patient or of the disease. In small doses, very little, and with some persons no, aperient action will be perceptible.

When it appears desirable that this action should be produced, the dose must be increased to a quantity sufficient to produce the desired briskness of action, which, once established, a much smaller dose will be sufficient to maintain when it is requisite to continue the purging for any longer period.

**PILULA SARZAE COMPOSITA:
COMPOUND PILL OF SARSAPARILLA. PURIFYING PILLS.**

Take of aloes and rhubarb, both in powder, each, one ounce; gum guaiacum, half an ounce; extract of sarsaparilla one ounce; extract of dock, a sufficient quantity. Form a mass, and divide into four-grain pills. This formula is given as being one of proved efficacy by prolonged trial in diseases arising from an impure condition of the blood and insufficient circulation, for blotches, pimples, and skin affections; and for the more serious eczematous diseases it is of the utmost value, and forms an admirable adjuvant to treatment by alterative medicines, both in these diseases and in scurvy, scrofula, rheumatic affections, and obstructions of the circulatory system. It is frequently employed, with other medicines, where a more active condition of the bowels is required, together with an alterative impression. For this purpose its action may be depended upon, both for certainty and efficiency. It is also suitable for employment in slight obstructions of the bowels when stronger medicines are not called for. The dose is one- to three pills during the day, as required.

**PILULA TARAXACI
PILL OF DANDELION.**

Take of extract of dandelion, any quantity; liquorice powder, a sufficient quantity. Form, a mass, and divide into four-grain pills. An excellent method for the exhibition of dandelion is afforded by this preparation, of which from three to six pills may be given during the day; it will be found productive of the same results as much larger quantities of the decoction. It is frequently useful as an adjuvant to medicines for the liver- and kidneys.

**PULVERES:
POWDERS.**

These form a class of preparations of extreme value, by means of which medicines may be prepared by infusion, which, in their crude or unpowdered state, would require decoction, or still more elaborate treatment, by which to extract their medicinal properties. They are also extensively employed as offering one of the most suitable methods of administration of medicines in substance. In the earlier days of medical botany these preparations were relied on more extensively, perhaps, than any others; and it has been thought advisable, as in other instances in this work, to accompany the description of the powders with their original names, names by which, more or less, they are still in many places known; viz., "stomach powder," etc.

In the preparation of the compound powders which follow, it is necessary, in the first instance, to have each separate article in a thorough state of pulverisation, in order that the amalgamation may be the more complete and thorough, before being brought into contact with any other ingredient of the mixture. When this condition has been complied with, the requisite quantity of each article is taken and passed through a tolerably fine sieve, and afterwards thoroughly incorporated with each other, the latter operation being generally performed by means of the mortar and pestle. Special care is required that the incorporation be very complete and thorough, as upon the satisfactory performance of this process depends in a very great degree the medicinal principles stated to belong to each of the preparations to be considered. The ordinary mode of exhibition, and the one contemplated in all cases, except where otherwise directed, is that of infusion. Four drachms of the powder are infused in half a pint of boiling water, allowed to cool, and afterwards strained. In acute cases, however, it may be taken as a general rule that these infusions act more quickly upon the indications for their employment when taken warm into the system. The usual dose-whether the infusion be given warm or cold it does not vary-unless otherwise ordered, is two fluid ounces four times a day. The powders, to be preserved, must be kept in well-stoppered bottles, or other air-proof receptacles, under which conditions they will remain for a considerable length of time without deterioration of their properties, which otherwise would be materially impaired by the action of damp and air.

**PULVIS BISTORTAE COMPOSITA:
COMPOUND POWDER OF BISTORT. RESTORATIVE POWDER.**

Take of bistort, comfrey, each, one ounce; balmony, pond lily, cloves, each, half an ounce; pulverise and mix.

This powder is especially designed for profuse menstruation, leucorrhoea, and weaknesses of the vagina and uterus. It forms one of the most valuable medicines for the weaknesses to which women are peculiarly liable, seldom requiring a prolonged employment to produce, even in the most severe and debilitating cases, a satisfactory change in the condition of the patient. It forms a most safe and reliable uterine astringent for hemorrhages, no less than for the mucous discharges from the female organs.

**PULVIS CARUI COMPOSITA,
COMPOUND POWDER OF CARRAWAY. ANTISPASMODIC POWDER.**

Take of caraway, one and a half ounces; bayberry, rhubarb, ginger, each, one ounce; lobelia, scullcap, goldenseal, each, two drachms; cayenne, one drachm; pulverise and mix. This is an elegant combination of antispasmodics and nervines, and is intended for employment where a combination of these two classes of medicines is indicated. In spasmodic pains, attacks of wind, fainting, hysteria, nervousness, nervous headaches, and indigestion, it is employed with the utmost advantage, and forms one of the most certain and reliable remedies for spasms of wind, pains in the stomach and bowels, and on taking food into the stomach, sickness, biliousness, and bilious disorders. It may be administered on the approach of spasms, and will frequently prevent the attack by removing the ferment from the stomach, or acting as a neutraliser upon it; in those cases even where the attack is not entirely prevented, it is rendered much less severe and prolonged by its timely employment. For indigestion, the ordinary dose is given four times a day, and, in those cases where the pain is found to be of greater violence after partaking of food, the medicine may, with propriety, be given from half an hour to an hour before eating. In the sickness and nervous disturbance accompanying indigestion in its more advanced and severe forms, nervous tremors, head pain, hysterical complaints, and neuralgia, it is exhibited with marked success; in all these different complexions of the same form of disease, this remedy is found to answer the indications admirably.

It is also prescribed with great advantage in those fits arising from a disturbed condition of the digestive apparatus and debility of the system. Other indications for the employment of this medicine are found in the vomiting of pregnancy and to prevent miscarriage. A tincture is prepared from this powder. See *TINCTURA CARUI COMPOSITAE*: described under its own head, which is used for the same purposes as the preparation at present under consideration, and which is somewhat handier for use, being in Equid form and ready for immediate exhibition; the dose of this preparation is one fluid drachm, in warm water, which may be sweetened or not, as desired, and which is to be repeated as required; this is, in the acuter forms of spasms and similar distress, superior by very much to the infusion obtained from the powder.

**PULVIS COMPOSITA.
COMPOSITION POWDER.**

Take of bayberry, twelve ounces; curcuma, six ounces; ginger, seven and a half ounces; cayenne, twelve drachms; pulverise and mix. An excellent medicine is provided in this formula for cold, flatulence, spasm, diarrhoea, and sudden attacks of pain generally. It is one of the most valuable, and, it is speaking perfectly within the mark to say, certainly the most popular, article in the whole botanic practice. Exhibited in the first stages of cold, it produces a gentle perspiration, which is yet more marked when the infusion is taken into the system while as warm as it can be drunk, arresting the progress of the affection at its onset; it is also useful in cold states of the system, debility of the stomach and entire digestive apparatus, and in obstructions of the circulatory system, rheumatism, and lumbago, and in certain nervous disorders it is given with the utmost success. In all indications for a stimulant or astringent tonic, composition will amply repay an experiment where this has not been given; this is particularly the case in acute diarrhoea, cramp in the stomach, bowels, or extremities, spasms, wind and pain in the bowels, and is one of the finest remedies, both in the prevention and removal of the flatulence of old people, and coldness of the extremities, and similar ailments peculiar to persons of advanced life. Composition enjoys, also, a considerable reputation as an adjuvant to, and vehicle for, the exhibition of other medicines. For the exhibition of emetics it would seem difficult to indicate a more useful or better adapted agent to perform the double capacity of adjuvant and vehicle than is furnished by this agent. When designed for this purpose, it should be given in doses of about one fluid ounce, repeated every ten minutes during the hour previous to the administration of the emetic, which should be given in a similar dose. After the emetic has been taken, the infusion of composition must be continued as freely as the patient can be prevailed upon to take it, until the emetic operates. The object gained by giving the composition for so long before, and continuing it after the administration of the emetic, is that the admirable astringent action of the medicine cleanses the stomach of its foul and morbid matter, and, by bringing this, to use the term to a focus, leaves the work of extirpation only for the emetic; by this means vomiting is produced with less pain and inconvenience to the patient, and with greater safety and certainty.

Composition is also frequently combined with other medicines where a stimulant or corrigent is required, especially is it adapted to cases of debility of the system, general or local. Composition powder is also used very largely as a beverage; indeed, it is very probable that it is employed quite as extensively for this purpose as for medicinal purposes, and a very useful as well as pleasant drink is formed from it; for the present purpose it is made in a much weaker infusion, to which sugar and milk are added in order to make it more palatable, and in this form it is taken as a substitute for tea and coffee by many with whom these beverages do not agree. A draught of the warm infusion taken upon going out into the cold at night or in the early morning, is of the greatest service possible in bracing up the system and enabling it the better to withstand the effects of the cold. It is also of extreme value taken in this manner before going to bed in cold weather by those subject to cramps and coldness of the limbs and extremities in the night, forming a very pleasant drink to supper. A so-called "wine," or cordial drink, is prepared from this article as follows :-Take of composition powder, half an ounce; water, two pints; sugar, white, twelve ounces; boil the powder in the water for five minutes, and strain, while hot, upon the sugar; when this is dissolved, allow it to cool, afterwards bottle.

The above preparation is equal in all respects to the infusion, and may be used in the same way; a more grateful beverage cannot possibly be desired, especially when in so pleasant a form a medicine of such value is taken into the system. This form, when taken after eating, a valuable aid to digestion, and is perfectly safe in any quantity.

**PULVIS FILICIS COMPOSITA,
COMPOUND POWDER OF GENTIAN. WORM POWDER.**

Take of male fern, kousso, each, half an ounce; jalap, two drachms; pulverise and mix. A valuable remedy against worms of all kinds, whether occurring in adults or children, is provided in this preparation. For the worms of children, one drachm of the powder is given in syrup, treacle, or a similar vehicle, at bed-time every night for a week, when its use is to be discontinued for a few days' to be recommended after that period if symptoms of the presence of worms are again manifested; for adults, one to two drachms of the powder must be given night and morning in the same way. Should a too free action of the bowels be induced, the dose will be required to be diminished or given at longer intervals. This powder is highly valued as a remedy against all worms, especially the tapeworm, as it not only removes the worms from the system, but also brings away from the intestines this slimy substance or mucus in which they generate, and which is so conducive to their existence in the system. Official preparation: Confectio Filicis Compositae.

**PULVIS GENTIANA: COMPOSITA.
COMPOUND POWDER OF GENTIAN. STOMACH BITTERS.**

Take of gentian, rhubarb, each, two ounces; columbo, bayberry, each, one ounce; ginger, carraway, cloves, each, twelve drachms; cayenne, two drachms; pulverise and mix. This is a valuable medicine in all affections of the stomach and digestive organs, loss of appetite, langour, and indigestion, and forms one of the most admirable tonics capable of employment. In weakness of the stomach, loss of appetite, and chronic indigestion, the ordinary dose of two fluid ounces of the infusion, four times a day, should be given, and will, in most cases, speedily produce a satisfactory impression; occasionally a somewhat prolonged employment will be necessary, but this is seldom the case, a short period usually being sufficient to produce a more satisfactory aspect of the complaint for which it is given. In the earlier stages of dyspepsia, where the inconvenience or pain is felt more particularly after eating, relief will be found from an exhibition from half an hour to an hour before meals. In cases of extreme debility of the stomach and digestive apparatus as a whole, with inability to retain food in proper quantity, the dose must be diminished in size, and given in greater frequency-four fluid drachms, or less, every one or two hours, will, in most cases, be found a convenient dose for these conditions when met with - and this dose must be continued until the digestive organs become stronger, and the stomach more tolerant of food, when the full dose at ordinary intervals may be resorted to with advantage, except when symptoms of an occasional sickness are present, and in these cases it will generally be deemed advisable to continue for a longer period with the divided dose. This medicine is of very great service in vomiting of food, and liver and bilious affections; and in the headache arising from disordered stomach, is one of the best adapted medicines to which employment can be given. It is also useful in the debility and nervousness succeeding upon drinking bouts, and in the delirium of drunkards. When a simple tonic rather than a medicine is required, this powder will be found of great suitability, but for this purpose it will not generally be necessary to give it oftener than twice a day, in a dose of two fluid ounces.

**PULVIS HYDRASTIDIS COMPOSITA,
COMPOUND POWDER OF GOLDENSEAL. CORRECTIVE POWDER.**

Take of goldenseal, poplar, bayberry, each, two ounces; ginger, cinnamon, carraway, each, half an ounce; pulverise and mix. A valuable medicine is afforded in this powder for obstructed and painful menstruation. In habitual irregularity of the menstrual evacuation, the medicine should be given from two days before the period until a sufficient discharge has been secured, when it will not be any longer necessary to continue its employment. Many cases of confirmed irregularity have been entirely overcome by the constant employment of this medicine during the menstrual period; it is also given with results of a most satisfactory nature in painful and bloody menstruation, and is well fitted for administration in all uterine obstructions.

**PULVIS INULAE COMPOSITA ,
COMPOUND POWDER OF ELECAMPAINE:. PULMONARY POWDER. COUGH
POWDER.**

Take of elecampane, one and a half ounces; liquorice, aniseed, each, one ounce; marshmallow, bone set, each twelve drachms; cayenne, two drachms; pulverise and mix. Demulcent and expectorant, this powder is used in all affections of a catarrhal nature, and in pulmonary complaints, cold, hoarseness, sore throat, cough, wheezing, respiratory difficulties, and for weakness of the chest, lungs, and air vessels, asthma, bronchitis, and in consumption. In all these complaints it is a medicine of the utmost value. Colds, coughs, sore throat, hoarseness, and the affections of lesser importance, are found in ordinary cases to yield readily to treatment with this preparation, two or three days only being the longest time usually required to produce a satisfactory change in the condition of the complaint. Influenza and wheezing also are very quickly removed by a timely recourse to it and it is employed with the happiest results in all other cases of an acute nature. But it is in chronic chest and lung diseases that its effects are seen to the best advantage; it loosens the mucus in those hard, dry coughs in which it is with great exertion that it is expectorated, and promotes its free expectoration, healing the chest, giving relief to the soreness occasioned by the incessant cough, and, acting as a fine lung tonic, producing, where this is necessary, a profuse expectoration without pain, and with less distressing cough; it is, therefore, exhibited with immense benefit in those heavy coughs commonly spoken of as "hacking" coughs. To the treatment of asthma and bronchitis it is of exceptional suitability, and even in the latter stages of consumption, where the disease is too far gone to admit any possibility of cure, this preparation will frequently produce the greatest relief, and procure an easy expectoration when all other means have failed to produce this result. In cases in which any considerable amount of blood is raised with the sputa, or in which the sputa is accompanied with any degree of hemorrhage from the lungs or other pulmonary organs, it has proved its efficacy, and is justly esteemed one of the most valuable medicines with which to meet those indications. Perhaps the very best effects possible to be produced by this powder are seen when given in substance, employing honey as the vehicle for its administration; two drachms of the powder in a quarter of an ounce of honey, every two, three, or four hours, as required, will be found of exceptional value in all pectoral affections, whether recent or chronic in their origin. This preparation is also well adapted to the coughs of children, but for this purpose the addition of sugar must be made in sufficient quantity to render the mixture palatable to them; it may, with advantage, be prepared as a syrup, and in this form will be found not only convenient and pleasant, but most useful as a cough medicine, and of especial value in whooping cough and the more serious chest affections of childhood.

**PULVIS MYRICAE COMPOSITA ,
COMPOUND POWDER OF BAYBERRY. CHILD'S POWDER.**

Take of bayberry, two ounces; rhubarb, liquorice, each, one and a half ounces; pleurisy, half an ounce; pulverize and mix. As is implied by one of the names by which it is commonly known, this is a preparation especially designed for the treatment of infantile and children's complaints, and is esteemed highly by those who have employed it in those diseases and affections peculiar to childhood; thrush, disordered stomach, disinclination for food, skin affections, and even whooping cough, are an indications for its employment, and in all of which it is . of extreme value. Indeed, this formula is the result of long experience in the treatment of these complaints in children. The dose of the infusion for an infant under two years of age is four fluid drachms three times a day, or oftener if required, to be increased proportionately to the age of the patient, but it is so safe that an overdose cannot produce any undesirable result: it is frequently desirable in severe cases to increase the dose, both in quantity and frequency. In feverishness, colds, disordered stomach, and in costiveness of the bowels, it may be used with certainty of benefit. For whooping cough it is given to the best advantage when sweetened with honey or sugar, which renders it additionally serviceable, or, for this purpose, it may be made into a syrup, of which four fluid drachms may be given four times a day, or oftener if the paroxysms occur so frequently as to render this course necessary;

when a dose can be administered immediately before the paroxysm, it is found always to exercise a beneficial influence in allaying somewhat its severity, and the consequent exhaustion following. This preparation is also well adapted to meet the general disturbance throughout the system accompanying the cutting of teeth, and, given in the warm infusion, in frequently repeated doses, is of the greatest benefit in convulsions and similar disorders, also in wind, spasmodic pains, and infantile headache.

**PULVIS PIPERIS COMPOSITA,
COMPOUND POWDER OF PEPPER. PILE POWDER.**

Take of pepper, elecampane, each, two ounces; marshmallow, liquorice, each, one ounce: carraway, one and a half ounces; pulverise and mix. Designed as a specific against piles, this preparation is very useful in the internal treatment of obstinate fistulas. It is of special suitability for piles, from the fact of its creating and maintaining a regular action of the bowels, a condition of the greatest possible moment in the treatment of this complaint; indeed, so admirably has it preserved this action in cases of habitual constipation, that many patients have continued its employment after the entire removal of the primary cause for which it was exhibited-piles-and have used it as a remedy against costiveness with the result that, after a persevering application, the medicine has established a proper action of the bowels, and this so effectually that recourse has not been necessary to it afterwards, the bowels acting regularly without the aid of this or any aperient. It is not, however, by its regulation of the bowels only that it is so effectual in the removal of piles, for it combines the properties of emollient and tonic in its composition; in the more recent cases only a few days are required usually to effect their complete disappearance, and it is very seldom, even in long standing cases, that it is requisite to continue its employment for any great length of time before the desired result is obtained. It will generally be found that a better method of its employment than that of the ordinary infusion is the one provided by the *Confectio Piperis Compositae*, described previously under its own distinctive term. Official preparation: *Confectio Piperis Compositae*.

**PULVIS POPULI COMPOSITA,
COMPOUND POWDER OF POPULI. DIURETIC POWDER.**

Take of poplar, dandelion, each, one and a half ounces; marshmallow, cubebs, and buchu, each, one ounce; pulverise and mix. A powder of deservedly extensive reputation in affections of the urinary system, in deficient secretion of the urine, and obstruction in passing off the urine, and of the urinary passages; in kidney complaints, affections of the bladder, stricture, and bloody urine, it is of extreme value; it is also extensively employed in weakness of the bladder, and mucous discharges from that organ, whether occurring as the result of colds or of a debilitated condition of that or other adjacent organs, or of the system generally. It is used to advantage in stone and gravel, being an excellent dissolvent of the urinary calculus, and for this purpose its exhibition has been followed by most surprising results in many cases; this medicine has been known to bring away immense quantities of gravel and calculi. Bloody urine is another of the indications for its employment in this complaint its effects are very quickly seen, the presence of the blood being in a very short time removed. Dropsy very quickly yields, except in its most advanced stages, to the action of this preparation; and in all obstructions of the urinary secretion, retention, and incontinence of urine, painful micturition, heat and scalding of the urine upon voiding, catarrh of the bladder, pain in the back and lumbar region, it is most successfully employed. It is given, also, in lumbago and some other rheumatic affections, including sciatica, in which its exhibition is of the greatest utility, and in the more chronic complaints of the urinary system is of as much value as in the more recent cases; it will, of course, be always borne in mind that in the more chronic stages of disease a longer period is in all cases necessary than in the more acute and recently acquired conditions of the same disease, to secure the full effects desired from the medicine.

**PULVIS SARZE COMPOSITA ,
COMPOUND POWDER OF SARSAPARILLA. PURIFYING POWDER.**

Take of sarsaparilla, two ounces; liquorice, saffras, burdock, each, one and a half ounces; guaiacum, one ounce; mezerion, half an ounce; pulverise and mix. This powder is used against impurities of the blood, and in all diseases arising out of an impure condition of that fluid. In scurvy, scrofula, old sores, long standing diseases of the blood, and blood poisoning, this forms one of the most reliable and successful medicines in employment. In these chronic conditions of disease it is necessary, in order to secure the fullest effect of which the medicine is capable, that a persevering use be kept up continuously for some considerable length of time. occasionally a shorter period will suffice to produce a beneficial result, but, as a general rule, a longer period is requisite;

this, however, is not more than has to be said of every other medicine designed to meet such indications, and it is safe to say, where cure is possible, it will invariably be performed, if the opportunity is given, by employment of this medicine. It is not less applicable to the treatment of spring rashes, eruption and irritation of the skin, pimples, and the minor indications of an overheated or impure condition of the blood; in these less serious and more recent affections, a few days, or at most a week or two, will in most cases be the longest time required to effect a complete cure. In those skin affections occurring in the head and beard, and as the result of debility after disease, etc., it is given to great advantage. Indeed, it is safe to say that it is adapted to all blood diseases, produced from whatever cause. Official preparation: Extractum Sarzre Fluidum Compositae.

**PULVIS TARAXACI COMPOSITA,
COMPOUND POWDER OF DANDELION. HEPATIC POWDER. CURATIVE POWDER.**

Take of dandelion, mustard seed, curcuma, each, one ounce; Barberry, half an ounce; mandrake, cayenne, each, two drachms; pulverise and mix. A valuable remedy is offered in this preparation for the treatment of liver complaint, jaundice, biliousness, sickness, and other indications of liver and splenic affections. It is a fine tonic, and forms an excellent aid to digestion; it is also very useful in the prevention and removal of the dyspepsia accompanying, as is frequently the case, liver complaint. It is also of much service in dropsy occurring as a complication with jaundice, and may, in all cases, be given with perfect freedom and safety.

**PULVIS TORMENTILLAE COMPOSITA.
COMPOUND POWDER OF TORMENTIL. CHOLERA POWDER. DIARRHEA POWDER.**

Take of tormentil, galangal, marshmallow, each, one ounce; ginger, four drachms; pulverise and mix. This is one of the best, most reliable, and, in point of time, most speedy medicines for employment in cholera, diarrhoea, dysentery, pain in the bowels, and weakness in that part of the system. In severe cases, accompanied with pain and griping, great benefit will be derived from the exhibition of a full dose after each evacuation, or even more frequently if deemed desirable; when sickness is present, a very small dose must be employed, which is to be repeated at frequent intervals; in some cases it will be found requisite to reduce the dose to one fluid drachm of the infusion, which will be exhibited every ten or fifteen minutes until the stomach is able to retain the medicine, when the dose may be very gradually augmented in quantity, and given at longer intervals, until the full dose is arrived at.

In no case need the regulation period of four times a day be strictly adhered to with this medicine; it is so perfectly safe in its action that it may be given almost ad libitum, and the greater the quantity taken into the system, the sooner will the symptoms be found to disappear. This preparation is an excellent astringent for all purposes, and may be given in excessive menstrual evacuation, and in all morbid discharges from the system; but, possessing a special fitness, and, indeed, prepared for the special purposes already described, and for which it is of such extreme value, it is seldom or never used for other purposes.

**PULVIS VALERIANAE COMPOSITA,
COMPOUND POWDER OF VALERIAN. NERVE POWDER.**

Take of valerian, scullcap, each, one ounce; cohosh, half an ounce; pulverise and mix. One of the most reliable preparations for exhibition in all nervous complaints and disturbance, the compound powder of valerian is used with marked success in hysteria, neuralgic affections of the head and upper portion of the spinal region, tooth and face ache, and in chordee, epilepsy, and fits. It forms a fine nervine tonic, and, as such, commands an extensive employment in neuralgic affections, in which relief is generally afforded after a very few exhibitions; it is, however, always safer to continue the use of the medicine for a short period after the disappearance of the symptoms, so as by strengthening the nerves to render the system less liable to a recurrence of the affection. In nervous tremors and twitchings, chordee, or St. Vitus' dance, hysterical complaints, epilepsy, and fits, a somewhat prolonged employment will frequently be necessary, but only in the most severe cases, amounting, indeed, to an incurable form, does it fail to effect a cure; even in the worst cases, where permanent cure is impossible, this medicine does very much to alleviate the pain and give relief to the more distressing symptoms. For fits recurring at regular intervals, it is generally unnecessary to give the medicine until within from four to five days before the anticipated attack, after which it should be given continuously for a week, and its employment then desisted from until a similar period prior to the next subsequent attack. This method of procedure frequently prevents the attack entirely;

where this is not actually the case, the force of the attack will generally be appreciably modified, and in succeeding attacks the power of the medicine will become more and more manifest until the cause for its employment is entirely removed. To prevent the delirium of fevers, this medicine is frequently resorted to, and with the happiest results; it is also well suited for sleeplessness, head pain, and those disorders of the brain and nervous system consequent upon over - taxation of the mental powers, too prolonged exertion in brain work, and the results of overwork, fatigue, and anxiety. It possesses no narcotic action, but exerts a perfectly natural influence upon the whole extent of the nervous system, soothing and quieting, and, where necessary, producing sleep, and therefore a complete rest of the entire system.

**SPIRITUS:
SPIRITS OR ESSENCES.**

This class of preparations consists chiefly of rectified spirit impregnated with the volatile principle of some of the medicinal plants, either by the simple addition of the essential oil to the spirit, or by distillation of the plant with spirit. They are admirably suited for addition to medicines to which it is desired to impart their flavour or medicinal principle.

**SPIRITUS ANISI:
ESSENCE OF ANISEED.**

Take of oil of aniseed, one ounce; rectified spirit fifteen ounces; dissolve the oil in the rectified spirit. A useful carminative, and, in some cases, expectorant; it is well suited for addition to medicines for pectoral complaints, and especially in those of children, to which a grateful carminative is desired to be added, It also serves to cover the flavour of unpleasant medicines. The dose of the preparation is one or two fluid drachms, on sugar or in sweetened water.

**SPIRITUS CAMPHORIE:
SPIRIT OF CAMPHOR.**

Take of camphor, one ounce; rectified spirit, nine ounces; rub the camphor to powder, and dissolve in the rectified spirit. This forms an. excellent addition to liniments for sprains, swellings, and inflammation, and to remove pain. Official preparation: Linimentum Campborre.

**SPIRITUS MENTHAE PIPERITAE:
ESSENCE OF PEPPERMINT.**

Take of oil of peppermint, one ounce; rectified spirit nine ounces; dissolve the oil in the spirit. This forms an exceedingly good carminative and anti-spasmodic, well fitted for separate exhibition or for addition to other medicines. It is an exceptionally fine corrigent to unpleasant medicines and those of griping tendencies, the action of which it serves to qualify. It is also useful in covering the flavour of medicines. The dose of the essence is from twenty to thirty drops, on sugar or in sweetened water.

**SPIRITUS ROSMARINI:
SPIRIT OF ROSEMARY.**

Take of oil of rosemary, one ounce; rectified spirit, nine ounces; dissolve the oil in the rectified spirit. Carminative and aromatic. The dose is twenty to thirty drops, in any convenient vehicle. As a medicine, it is used chiefly as an addition to medicines for nervous and hysterical affections, and in headaches, but it is less used as an internal remedy than as an ingredient. in certain stimulating liniments for the removal of pain, or to discuss collections of pus which it is undesirable to bring to suppuration.

**SYRUPI ,
SYRUPS.**

The form of syrup offers a most convenient mode of exhibition for some medicines, in order to present them in a more acceptable form, or to cover their taste, and is also of extreme utility as being of such convenience in the preparation of other forms of medicine, as in the case of mixtures, &c. Syrups are the result of an incorporation with sugar or treacle, of some medicine in the form of infusion, decoction, solution, tincture, or other liquid.

When prepared from a tincture, the tincture should, previously to being brought into contact with the sugar, be subjected to a sufficient heat to drive off the spirit contained in its composition, after which the sugar may be added. A better method than the foregoing has, however, been proposed, specially applicable to those cases where a tincture containing an aromatic or volatile principle has to be dealt with; this consists in exposing the tincture, mixed with coarsely powdered sugar, to a very gentle heat, and then, when the spirit has been driven off, to prepare the syrup by dissolving the impregnated sugar, thus obtained, in the requisite proportion of water. When it is desirable to cover the flavour of the ingredients of which the syrup is composed, treacle will be found, invariably, more eligible than sugar as the agent in making the preparation. The proportion of sugar proper to a given quantity of water may be generally stated at two parts, by weight, of sugar, to one part, by weight also, of the liquid. Care is to be taken in their preparation that syrups are not kept too long at a boiling heat, as this not only impairs, as is frequently the case, the medicinal virtue of the ingredients, but is apt to discolour the syrup. Refined sugar is always to be employed in the preparation of syrups, as, generally, by its employment, little clarification is necessary; even with the best of sugars, it is recommended that all the scum be removed as it rises, while subject to the heating process, and that all syrups be strained, while hot, through flannel. When made, they should be kept in closely stoppered bottles, in a cool place.

SYRUPUS.
SYRUP. SIMPLE SYRUP.

Take of refined sugar, five pounds; water, a sufficient quantity; dissolve the sugar in two pints of water by a gentle heat, and, after cooling, add as much water as is required to make the weight of the product seven and a half pounds. This syrup is useful, and conveniently kept on hand, for the preparation of extempore syrups, mixtures, &c.; the medicinal liquid being simply added to this preparation, the required syrup is at once ready. It is also employed as a vehicle for the administration of medicines which are given in substance; the powdered article being suspended in the syrup, is more easily swallowed. As an excipient in pill making, also, it finds an extensive employment, as it is not only one of the most suitable agents in forming the mass and giving to it its proper consistence and degree of tenacity, but it also preserves the pills, after being made, from becoming dry and hard.

SYRUPUS LOBELIAE:
SYRUP OF LOBELIA. COUGH MIXTURE.

Take of acid tincture of lobelia, two ounces; aniseed water, one ounce; treacle, one pound; expose the treacle to a gentle heat until of as nearly a liquid consistency as can be obtained, add the other ingredients, while still under the action of heat, mix them thoroughly together, and strain through flannel. This preparation is designed principally for administration to infants and children, and forms one of the best methods for the exhibition of lobelia to young patients. In colds, coughs, and chest complaints, it acts quickly and effectually and affords one of the most useful medicines in the treatment of chronic cough, whooping cough, and the pectoral affections of childhood and infancy generally. It is also useful in the coughs, difficulty of breathing, and chest complaints of persons advanced in life, especially is it so in those cases accompanied with weakness and the utter prostration frequently consequent upon the paroxysms of coughing. The dose for children is from one to two fluid drachms, three or four times a day, and for those in advanced life, two to four fluid drachms, at similar intervals this quantity, however, need not be strictly adhered to, generally this is the fullest quantity necessary to produce the effect desired, but it may be given in greater quantity or more frequently if there appear anything to be gained by its exhibition in a larger quantity. It is quite pleasant to the taste, and no difficulty is experienced, generally, in administering it to the youngest child, and it is so perfectly safe as to be capable of exhibition to infants immediately upon their birth. Occasionally, when given in large quantities, it produces sickness, but where this is the case there will be nothing to fear, as the vomit will be found, upon inspection, to consist principally of mucus, which it is desirable should be voided, rather than of food or other matter which it is desirable should be retained upon the stomach.

SYRUPUS RHEI:
SYRUP OF RHUBARB.

Take of tincture of rhubarb, four fluid ounces; syrup, one pint; mix. Syrup of rhubarb offers a safe and convenient cathartic for exhibition in cases of infants and young children. The dose is from one to two fluid drachms which may be augmented or decreased, as is found necessary to suit the age and other circumstances of the child.

SYRUPUS SENNAE:
SYRUP OF SENNA.

Take of senna, in powder, six ounces; oil of carraway, one minim; refined sugar, twelve ounces; water, a sufficient quantity. Pack the powder, previously moistened with water, into a percolator, pour upon it a sufficient quantity of water to produce a pint, evaporate this to half its quantity.

To this add the sugar, in which the oil of carraway has been previously absorbed, and dissolve with a gentle heat; when dissolved, and while still hot, strain through flannel. This forms a useful aperient medicine, designed more especially for children, but which may be given to adults with advantage in cases not requiring a strong purgative action. The dose is, for children, one fluid drachm; for adults, two to four fluid drachms. to be repeated as required.

SYRUPUS SPIGELIAE COMPOSITA. SYRUP OF INDIAN PINK. WORM SYRUP.

Take of Indian pink, senna, each, two ounces; kousso, one ounce; refined sugar, forty ounces; water, a sufficient quantity. Infuse the medicinal ingredients in six pints of boiling water for ten minutes; strain, and evaporate by a low temperature to one pint, "add the sugar, and dissolve by a gentle heat; while hot, strain, and add sufficient water to make the weight of the product sixty ounces. This forms an elegant preparation for anthelmintic purposes, adapted for employment against worms of all kinds, more especially occurring in children, and is extremely efficacious in expelling tapeworm. The dose varies from half to one fluid ounce, once or twice a day, according to the circumstances of the case. This preparation is equal to, and very much more easy at administration than, the administration in suspension, in honey or syrup, of the crude powders.

TINCTURAE : TINCTURES.

Tinctures are liquids which, after a medicinal substance having been inserted in them, become, after more or less time and operation, impregnated with the properties of the medicine so inserted. To effect this purpose, three different menstrua receive employment, viz.: spirit, ether, and acid, which give to the preparation the distinctive names of spirit tincture, ethereal tincture, and acid tincture, one of these three menstrua being in all cases used, the particular one varying according to the substance to be acted upon-some substances yielding their properties better to one, and others to another of these agents-or, to the nature of the result it is desired to obtain. Unless otherwise designated, however, the term tincture is in all cases understood as applying to spirit tinctures, in all other instances the terms ethereal or acid being employed for the purposes of distinction. Proof spirit is the menstruum most generally in employment in the preparation of tinctures. as most medicinal substances are found to readily yield their properties to this agent. Containing sufficient spirit to preserve the product from decomposition, and at the same time presenting a sufficient volume of water to abstract that portion of the medicinal principle which the spirit alone -would be insufficient to exhaust, proof spirit is admirably adapted as the menstruum for these preparations, being both convenient and efficient.

The advantages presented in the exhibition of medicines in the form of tincture, are in many respects great. Medicinal strength. consequent smallness of dose, preservation in liquid form for an unlimited time, convenience of administration and of admixture with other medicines, and in the preparation, also, of extempore medicines, are all advantages served by the class of preparations now under consideration. Tinctures are best prepared by the operation known as percolation, in which the substance to be acted upon-being previously reduced to a state of coarser or finer powder, as is necessary in the different tinctures to be prepared. and moistened with a small quantity of the menstruum-is packed into the percolator, the quantity of the menstruum ordered being afterwards placed in the upper part of the instrument and allowed to percolate through the substance until the whole quantity has passed; after which, when necessary, the substance is to be subjected to pressure in order to recover the liquid retained during the operation.

It is not absolutely necessary in all cases to employ a percolator for the proper performance of the operation; an ordinary funnel of glass or tinned iron of the requisite dimensions may be made sufficient for most, if not all, the operations required in tincture making; the bottom is to be stopped with lint, or a similar substance, through which the liquid is at liberty to pass; upon this the substance to be exhausted is placed-having, as in the case of the percolator proper, been previously moistened with a sufficient quantity of the menstruum-which is then covered with muslin or a similarly thin fabric, and upon this the quantity of menstruum ordered is to be poured.

The object gained by the interposition of the muslin between the substance and the menstruum is that, by this means, the former is as little disturbed as possible by the addition of the latter agent: a highly desirable object, as, if any disturbance of the substance were allowed, considerable quantities of the menstruum would pass off without having received the amount of impregnation proper to their full medicinal strength. Care is to be exercised that where for any reason, as the size of the vessel and other considerations, the full amount of the menstruum cannot all at once be inserted, this is done before the portion already contained in the instrument has passed the muslin partition, in order to prevent undue access of air during the operation; to this it is necessary to pay particular attention, as the substance is not in such a fit condition after access of air for the completion of the operation as is desirable. On arriving at the bottom of the funnel, the percolated fluid should pass away in drops; should it, instead of this, come away in greater quantity, its progress must be impeded by the insertion of a cork covered with lint, which may be pushed in at the bottom of the instrument as far as is necessary to prevent undue egress, and any liquid so passed is to be returned to the upper part of the vessel, again to go through the process, as, by passing away more quickly than is desirable, the proper amount of communication between the substance and menstruum cannot take place, and it consequently escapes without due impregnation with the medicinal principle. The old method, and it is yet extensively practised for the preparation of tinctures, was by maceration or digestion, two terms expressive of a similar operation, maceration being the term applied to the operation when carried on at a temperature not higher than 90~ Fahrenheit, and digestion when a temperature of from 90 to 120' Fahrenheit is employed. These operations are performed by placing together, in the same receptacle, the substance in a state of powder and the menstruum, which are to be well shaken together two or three times a day, this process being continued for a period of from seven to fourteen days, the period varying according to the substance dealt with. At the expiration of the period of maceration or digestion, the liquid is poured off, and the remainder subjected to pressure, in order to regain the liquid contained in the exhausted substance, the resulting liquid is then added to that previously obtained, and the whole filtered. Tinctures are not suitable for administration in chronic cases, in which large doses of medicine are indicated, or where the medicine is to be continuously employed for any length of time. A prolonged use of this class of preparations has frequently been known to induce a taste for ardent spirits, which has grown into a habit of intemperance.

**TINCTURA ALOES,
TINCTURE OF ALOES.**

Take of soccotrine aloes, in powder, half an ounce; extract of liquorice, one and a half ounces; proof spirit, a sufficient quantity. Macerate in a pint of proof spirit for seven days, then filter, and add proof spirit sufficient, through the filter, to produce one pint of the product. Tincture of aloes is tonic, purgative, and emmenagogue. It is chiefly employed in uterine disorders, and for those states of the system produced by the retention of the menstrual evacuation. It is also given as a purgative with other medicines, but, owing to the extreme nausea of the drug, which is not altogether covered by the presence of the liquorice, it is more frequently employed in the form of pill than in any other way.

**TINCTURA BENZOINI COMPOSITA,
COMPOUND TINCTURE OF BENZOIN. FRIAR'S BALSAM.**

Take of benzoin, in coarse powder, two ounces; storax, one and a half ounces; balsam of tulu, half an ounce; soccotrine aloes, half an ounce; rectified spirit, a sufficient quantity. Macerate in one pint of rectified spirit for seven days, then filter, and add, through the filter, sufficient rectified spirit to make the product measure one pint.

Tincture of benzoin is used as an outward application to cuts, bruises, chapped hands and breasts, and to some ulcerous sores. It is also used in domestic practice very extensively, as an internal remedy for coughs and catarrhal affections, in which it is of some value. Of course, the formula of this preparation is not the original one for the compound formerly known by the name of friar's balsam, being merely a simplification of that one; it is, nevertheless, for all practical purposes, equal to, and much to be preferred to, the very complex formula of the old preparation.

**TINCTURA CAPSICI:
TINCTURE OF CAYENNE**

Take of cayenne, in fine powder, twelve drachms; rectified spirit, a sufficient quantity. Moisten the powder with rectified spirit, pack it into a percolator, and pour upon it sufficient rectified spirit to make the product measure one pint. This tincture is used as a stimulant in cases of extreme debility of the stomach and gastric insensibility. It is useful in the delirium of drunkards and similar conditions of the system, and may also be used in all cases where the crude article is indicated.

The dose is from half to one fluid drachm, which may, upon occasion, be increased to two fluid drachms.

**TINCTURA CARUI COMPOSITA:
COMPOUND TINCTURE OF CARRAWAY, ANTISPASMODIC TINCTURE.**

Take of compound powder of caraway, two and a half ounces; proof spirit, a sufficient quantity. Moisten the powder with proof spirit, pack it into a percolator and pour upon it sufficient proof spirit to make the product measure one pint This is an elegant and convenient antispasmodic preparation, useful in wind, spasms, lock-jaw, hysterical and neuralgic affections, and for the symptoms occurring as the accompany-iment of these affections; it affords one of the most speedy and valuable medicines possible to which employment can, in these cases, be given.

It is also of the utmost value in sickness, and has been employed with much benefit for asthmatic patients, who, from the nature of their employment or other conditions, are frequently exposed to severe weather; it warms and braces the entire system, acting as a gentle stimulant upon all the organs and the nerves. In facial affections and neuralgic indications. it is exhibited to very great advantage, speedily producing the removal of the pain, and relieving all the symptoms. The dose is one fluid drachm, which may be repeated as frequently as may be found desirable; in sickness, the dose may be given at intervals of five minutes; and for spasmodic pains, it is given in a similar manner; in spasmodic asthma, the same quantity in warm water on going out into the cold air; and for tic and neuralgic affections, it may be administered every five or ten minutes, as required, being for this purpose held to the tooth or seat of the pain for a few seconds before swallowing; this is found, frequently, to give relief before the medicine has time to produce its action in the ordinary manner. It may in all cases be given, when so desired, in warm water, which mayor may not be sweetened, at the pleasure of the patient.

**TINCTURA GENTIANAE COMPOSITA:
COMPOUND TINCTURE OF GENTIAN.**

Take of gentian, one and a half ounces; bitter orange peel, twelve drachms; cardamons, four drachms, all in powder; proof spirit, a sufficient quantity. Mix the powders, and moisten with proof spirit, pack into a percolator, and pour upon them sufficient proof spirit to make the product measure one pint This is one of the most acceptable of tonics, and of extreme value in the more recent stages of dyspepsia and debility of the digestive apparatus. It is well fitted for employment as an adjuvant to tonic medicines generally. It is not, however, suitable in cases of a chronic nature. The dose is one fluid drachm, as required, which may be increased to two.

**TINCTURA LOBELLIE ACIDUM:
ACID TINCTURE OF LOBELIA.**

Take of lobelia., in powder, two and a half ounces; diluted acetic acid, a sufficient quantity. Moisten the powder with diluted acetic acid, pack it into a glass percolator, and pour upon it sufficient diluted acetic acid to make the product measure one pint. The acid tincture offers a very convenient method for the administration of lobelia. being adapted (or all the indications for the crude article. In asthma, affections of the respiratory apparatus, and spasmodic chest difficulties, it is of extreme value. It also forms one of the most effectual and reliable emetics; for this purpose it is perfectly safe, producing, at the same time with the action of vomiting, a useful diaphoretic impression, which materially aids in throwing off the after - effects consequent upon the action of many emetics, no after-effects being noticeable from the employment of this preparation. The dose is, as an expectorant, half to one fluid drachm, which may be given three or four times a day, the last dose in the day being taken immediately before retiring for the night, in order to, as far as possible, prevent or alleviate the night symptoms frequently present; as an emetic, the dose is from half to one fluid ounce, which is given in precisely the same way as that recommended for the exhibition of the crude agent for this purpose, simply substituting for the powder, as there given, the tincture now under consideration. See LOBELIA, in Part 1. Official preparation: Symploc Lobeliae.

**TINCTURA MYRRHIE.
TINCTURE OF MYRRH.**

Take of myrrh, in coarse powder, two and a half ounces; proof spirit, a sufficient quantity: Moisten the powder with proof spirit, pack into a percolator, and add sufficient proof spirit to make the product measure one pint. Tincture of myrrh is seldom employed as an internal remedy, its chief use being as a stimulant application to bad wounds, ulcerous sores, and to promote the healing of cuts and wounds generally;

in all ill-conditioned ulcers and sores it is of value in cleansing and astringing the parts, and removing and preventing very largely the re-formation of pus and suppurative conditions of wounds, and also forms an excellent addition to eye washes. It is useful as a gargle in sore and ulcerated mouth and fauces, being employed in the ratio of one fluid ounce of the tincture in two fluid ounces of water,; or in a stronger form if the patient is able to bear it; it is occasionally used for the same purposes as a medicine, and as a medicine, too, has been employed as an emmenagogue with benefit. It is also well adapted as an adjuvant to medicines designed to meet the indications for stimulants and astringents. Rectified spirit has been employed in the preparation of this tincture, but is not recommended here, the only advantage derived from its employment being that the product is clearer when so obtained than' that from the proof spirit. The dose is from half to one fluid drachm, as required.

**TINCTURA PODOPHYLLI:
TINCTURE OF MANDRAKE.**

Take of mandrake, two ounces; coriander seeds, half an ounce, each in powder; proof spirit, a sufficient quantity. Mix the powders, and moisten with sufficient proof spirit, pack into a percolator, and pour upon them sufficient proof spirit to make the product measure one pint. This tincture possesses all the properties of the root, and may therefore be given employment for similar indications. It is a convenient and effectual remedy in biliousness and sickness, and is of extreme value in jaundice and all liver complaints of recent origin. As a cathartic, the present preparation is to be preferred to the infusion, decoction, or administration in substance. of the crude agent; it acts efficiently and thoroughly, but without the accompanying vomiting as in the case of certain other methods of exhibition. This preparation also furnishes a convenient addition to other medicines to which, in addition to their own properties, it is desired to impart that of an aperient or cathartic. The dose for ordinary purpose is from one to two fluid drachms, three or four times a day; as a cathartic, from half to one ounce, according to the extent of the action required and the condition of the case.

**TINCTURA RHEI
TINCTURE OF RHUBARB.**

Take of rhubarb, two and a quarter ounces ; cloves, four drachms, each in powder; proof spirit, a sufficient quantity. Mix the two powders, and moisten with proof spirit, pack into a percolator, and pour upon them sufficient proof spirit to make the product measure one pint. Tincture of rhubarb is a purgative, stomachic, and tonic, and is well adapted to weak conditions of the stomach and digestive organs, especially where accompanied with diarrhoea and other symptoms consequent upon these conditions of the digestive system ; as a stomachic, it is alike suitable for individual employment and for combination with other medicines. It is also of extreme value in the lowness, sometimes accompanied with constipation, of fevers, a class of disease in which its action is of a most marked and satisfactory character. In all cases of langour and debility, this preparation is eligible for employment, and is frequently, with this object in view, combined with other medicines; a similar combination is also effected where a mild aperient action is desired in conjunction with that of another medicine. The dose as a stomachic and tonic is from one to two fluid drachms ; as a purgative, from half to one fluid ounce, to be repeated as required.

**UNGUENTA:
OINTMENTS.**

Ointments are substances designed for outward application of about the consistence of fresh lard or butter, having as their foundation, generally, lard or some similar fatty matter. They are prepared in most cases by heating, by the aid of a low temperature, those ingredients of the composition which require melting, together with the lard or other substance forming the foundation of the preparation, and straining; other ingredients, if any, are to be previously brought into a state of very fine powder, which is to be perfectly free from gritty particles, and thrown into the cooling mass, which must be subjected to constant agitation until cold, in order: to prevent the otherwise inevitable separation of the product into separate parts instead of one uniform whole. In the case of those ointments which are prepared simply by the admixture of a powder with the lard, or simple ointment, the same care is to be exercised in securing the absolute freedom of the powder from gritty and foreign particles, and that it is in the finest possible state of division; it may then be added to the substance which is to form the basis of the preparation, and thoroughly incorporated; this operation is usually performed with the ordinary spatula, heat being in very few cases; if at all, required. Some ointments are prepared by stewing or boiling the leaves or other medicinal matter in the substance forming the basis of the ointment, but in these cases it would generally be found better practice to prepare an extract of the medicinal agent employed in the operation, and to subsequently incorporate this extract with the simple ointment or other base.

If the extract be not uniformly soft, it should, previous to this incorporation, be subjected to trituration with a little water. When made, it should, as in the previous case, be subject to constant agitation till cold. Ointments should be kept in covered pots in a cool place.

UNGUENTUM OINTMENT. SIMPLE OINTMENT

Take of white wax, one ounce; lard, four ounces. Melt them together with a gentle heat, and allow the mixture to cool, keeping up a constant agitation till cold.

This is useful as a basis for ointments which it may be necessary to prepare extemporaneously at short notice; the ingredients to be added, having been previously reduced to a state of fine powder and freedom from all grit, are incorporated by means of the spatula, or, in the case of substances not pulverisable, melted and added to this basis, constant agitation being required until the cooling process is completed. It is occasionally employed as an emollient application to abraded surfaces, but is far inferior for this purpose to the marshmallow ointment described in the following article.

UNGUENTUM ALTHAEAE: MARSHMALLOW OINTMENT.

Take of marshmallow leaves, three ounces; slippery elm bark, one ounce; beeswax, four ounces; lard, sixteen ounces; water, a sufficient quantity. Boil the marshmallow and slippery elm in three pints of water for fifteen minutes, express, strain, and reduce the resulting liquor to half a pint. With the aid of a gentle heat, melt together the lard and wax, and, while melted, add the extract, keep at a moderate heat for fifteen minutes longer, constantly agitating, then put it in a cool place, keeping up a constant agitation till cold. This is one of the best and most effective emollient ointments receiving employment; possessing singular cooling and healing power, it is peculiarly adapted as an application for burns, scalds, inflammatory sores and wounds, and erysipelatous eruptions. For chaps and frost bite it is very useful, and for chapped and abraded nipples it is one of the most elegant and safe applications possible to be employed. It is of the greatest suitability for the chafing prevalent among young children, relieving the irritation set up by the chafing; and healing the abraded surfaces in a very short time. To promote the healing and relieve the inflammation and pain of old wounds and sores, it is also extensively employed, and in treatment of these old-standing cases is followed by results of a most satisfactory nature.

UNGUENTUM RUMECIS, OINTMENT OF DOCK, ANTISCORBUTIC OINTMENT.

Take of yellow dock root, four ounces; alkanet root, one ounce; beeswax, three ounces; lard, sixteen ounces; water, a sufficient quantity. Boil the roots in three pints of water for fifteen minutes, express, strain, and evaporate till only five ounces remain. Melt together the lard and wax by aid of a gentle heat, and, while melted, add the extract, keep at a moderate heat for ten minutes longer, constantly agitating, then put in a cool place, keeping up a constant agitation till cold. This ointment forms a valuable external adjuvant to the internal exhibition of alteratives: in the treatment of scorbutic affections and indolent tumours which seem to require a cleansing application, possessing at the same time considerable emollient properties. It is exceedingly valuable where an astringent and stimulant are indicated together with an emollient for external application, so that the healing action may be promoted as the wound assumes a healthier condition. It forms a most suitable application to itch, scurvicul and scrofulous sores, and sloughing ulcers.